



## Installation instructions/User manual

V 6.3.0 - from HW02 - en | Aug. 11th, 2021



MDH810, MDH811, MDH814, MDH815, MDH816, MDH819, MDH830, MDH831, MDH834, MDH835, MDH841, MDH849, MDH850, MDH855, MDH858, MDH859



By purchasing an *mbNET* router, you've selected a Made in Germany product. Our products are manufactured exclusively in Germany, to guarantee the highest quality and to secure jobs in Europe.

This manual describes the functions and operation of the *mbNET* Router MDH 810 – MDH 859 from hardware version HW02 and from firmware version 6.2.4. Please read it carefully and keep in a safe place.

Find the latest information and updates on our website at www.mbconnectline.com.

We always welcome and are grateful for comments, suggestions for improvement and constructive criticism.

#### Trademarks and company logos

The use of a trademark and company logo not shown here is not an indication that it is freely available for use.

#### Publisher:

MB connect line GmbH Remote Maintenance Solutions Winnettener Str. 6 91550 Dinkelsbühl GERMANY

Tel.: +49 (0) 700 MBCONNECT +49 (0) 700 622 666 32 Website: www.mbconnectline.com

The latest information can be found on our website. We are always grateful for suggestions and proposed improvements.

Copyright © MB connect line GmbH 1997 - 2021

## Table of contents

1	General	9
2	Information about cyber-security	13
3	Warning signs	14
4	Security information	14
		47
5	Maintenance	17
6	Legal notice	18
7	Functional overview	19
8	Technical data	20
9	Scope of Supply	28
10	Display, controls and connectors	20
10	10.1 Front view of device	<b>23</b>
	10.2 View at the top of the device	29
	10.3 View of underside of device	33
11	Interface assignment	34
	11.1 Pin assignment of terminal blocks X1 and X2 on the top of the device	34
	11.2 Pin assignment of the RJ11 socket on the bottom of the device	34
	11.3 Pin assignment serial interfaces COM1/COM2 (front of device)	34
	11.4 Pin assignment LAN/WAN port on front of device	35
	11.5 Pin assignment USB port on front of device	36
12	Router Installation	37
13	Starting the router	38
14	Connect router to configuration PC	39
45		40
15		40
16	First Start	41
17	Portal server - First start	42
	17.1 Internet - Configuring the Internet connection	43
	17.1.1 External Router/Firewall WAN settings	43
	17.1.2 DSL Settings	45
	17.1.3 Modem Connection Settings	46
	17.1.4 Wi-Fi Connection Settings	47
	17.2 Portal Server - Settings	48
	17.3 Finish - Apply settings	49
18	Quick Start - Cloud Status Page	51

	18.1	Quick Start	51
	18.2	Diagnosis	53
	18.3	loT	54
19	Clas	sic router - configuring the mbNET via the web interface	56
	19.1	Description of the graphical user interface (configuration interface)	56
	19.2	Description of buttons, icons and fields	57
20	Syst	em - settings and basic router configuration	58
	20.1	System > Info	59
	20.2	System > CTM (Configuration Transfer Manager)	61
	20.3	System > Settings	63
		20.3.1 System > Settings > System Settings	64
		20.3.2 System > Settings > Time Settings	65
		20.3.3 System > Settings > NTP Settings	66
		20.3.4 System > Settings > Mail Settings	
		20.3.5 System > Settings > Device-API	69
		20.3.6 System > Settings > System Service	70
	20.4	System > WEB	71
		20.4.1 System > Web > HTTPS access for device configuration	73
		20.4.2 System > Web > System Services	74
	20.5	System > User	75
		20.5.1 Added/Edited User	
	20.6	System > Certificates	
		20.6.1 Own certificate	79
		20.6.1.1 Import own certificate	79
		20.6.2 CA certificate (root certificate)	81
		20.6.2.1 Importing CA certificate (root certificate)	81
		20.6.3 Partner certificate (IPSec)	82
		20.6.3.1 Import partner certificate	
		20.6.4 CRL (revocation list)	84
		20.6.4.1 Import CRL (revocation list)	84
	20.7	System > Memory devices	85
		20.7.1 USB	85
		20.7.1.1 USB Settings	85
		20.7.1.2 USB access from the network	
		20.7.1.3 USB devices	
		20.7.2 SD Access from network	87
	20.8	System > Logging	
		20.8.1 General Settings	
		20.8.2 External logging (server settings)	89
	20.9	System > Configuration (backup and restore)	
	20.10	0 System > Firmware (Firmware update)	91
		20.10.1Firmware update	92
21	Netw	vork - connection settings and options	93

## mbNET.

	21.1	Network > LAN	95
		21.1.1 Interface	
		21.1.2 Routes	97
	21.2	Network > WAN	99
		21.2.1 Interface - set WAN interface type	99
		21.2.2 Routes	100
	21.3	Network > Wi-Fi	
		21.3.1 Interface - set Wi-Fi interface type	103
		21.3.2 Wi-Fi Settings	104
	21.4	Network > Modem	108
		21.4.1 Analogue modem configuration	
		21.4.1.1 Modem Settings	109
		21.4.1.2 Outgoing (configuration for outgoing connections)	110
		21.4.1.3 Incoming	112
		21.4.1.4 Call Back	114
		21.4.2 GSM modem configuration	115
		21.4.2.1 Modem Settings	115
		21.4.2.2 Outgoing SIM 1/SIM 2 (configuration for outgoing connections)	116
		21.4.2.3 General SIM Settings	119
		21.4.2.4 SMS (Remotely control services via SMS Send SMS if,)	121
	21.5	Network > Internet (Internet connection and Internet settings)	124
		21.5.1 Configure Internet connectivity	
		21.5.2 Internet settings (connection settings)	128
	21.6	Network > DHCP	132
		21.6.1 LAN/WAN DHCP server settings	133
		21.6.2 LAN/WAN DHCP static lease server settings	
	21.7	Network > DNS-Server	135
	21.8	Network Hosts	138
	21.9	Network > DynDNS	140
		21.9.1 System DynDNS settings (MB Connect Line DynDNS service)	140
		21.9.2 Public DynDNS service	141
22	Seria	II (serial ports COM1/COM2)	143
	22.1	COM1/COM2 in the RS232/485 version	144
		22.1.1 COM1 (COM2) settings	144
		22.1.2 COM1 (COM2) network settings	145
	22.2	COM2 in the MPI/PROFIBUS version	146
		22.2.1 COM2 Settings	146
		22.2.2 COM2 Network settings	148
23	Secu	rity settings	149
	23.1	Security Settings > Firewall General	150
	23.2	Security Settings > WAN LAN (configuration of the firewall rules)	152
		23.2.1 Edit firewall rule	155
	23.3	Security Settings > LAN-WAN (configuration of the firewall rules)	157
		23.3.1 Edit firewall rule	160

	23.4	3.4 Security Settings > Forwarding		
		23.4.1 Edit Forwarding Rule	165	
	23.5	Security settings > NAT	167	
		23.5.1 SimpleNAT		
		23.5.1.1 Edit SimpleNAT Rule	168	
		23.5.2 1:1 NAT	170	
		23.5.2.1 Edit 1:1 NAT rule	171	
24	VPN.		173	
	24.1	IPSec	173	
		24.1.1 Configure IPSec connections	173	
		24.1.2 IPSec settings		
	24.2	PPTP		
		24.2.1 PPTP server configuration	183	
		24.2.2 PPTP client configuration		
	24.3	OpenVPN	187	
		24.3.1 Configure OpenVPN connections		
		24.3.1.1 Connection type: Client router connection	188	
		24.3.1.2 Connection type: Router-router connection - server mode	197	
		24.3.1.3 Connection type: Router-router connection -client mode		
	24.4	Static key (key management)	219	
25	IO-M	anager	221	
	25.1	Configuring the PLC connection	222	
	25.2	Logging - configuration		
	25.3	Status	225	
	25.4	Create tags	226	
	25.5	Diagnosis	228	
26	Alarn	n Management		
	26.1	Digital inputs - Configuration	229	
	26.2	Digital outputs - Configuration		
27	Extra	IS	233	
	27.1	LUA	233	
	27.2	IoT > Control (mbEDGE)	236	
		27.2.1 IoT > Control > Docker - activate mbEDGE	236	
		27.2.2 IoT > Control - after activating mbEDGE		
		27.2.3 IoT > Control - activate Docker Management		
		27.2.3.1 Link to User Interface	241	
		27.2.4 Flows and Dashboard	242	
		27.2.4.1 Activate flows and dashboard		
		27.2.4.1.1 Link to Flows (Node-RED)	243	
		27.2.4.1.2 Link to Dashboard (Node-RED)		
		27.2.5 Backup and Delete flows	245	
	27.3	Network	245	
	27.3 27.4	Network	243 	

		27.4.1 Create Backup-Key	248
	27.5	Firmware	249
	27.6	RoKEY	250
28	Statu	is (information and analysis)	252
	28.1	Status > Interfaces	252
	28.2	Status > Network	254
		28.2.1 General	
		28.2.2 Firewall	255
		28.2.3 Network participants	
	28.3	Status > Modem	257
		28.3.1 GSM information	257
		28.3.2 Modem	
	28.4	Wi-Fi	
	28.5	Internet	
	28.6	DHCP	
	28.7	DNS Server	
	28.8	DynDNS	263
	28.9	NTP	
	28.10	) VPN-IPSec	
	28.11	VPN-PPTP	266
		28.11.1VPN PPTP server	266
		28.11.2VPN PPTP clients	267
	28.12	2 VPN-OpenVPN	268
	28.13	3 IoT	
		28.13.1IoT > Docker	269
		28.13.2IoT > Docker Management	270
		28.13.3IoT > Flows and Dashboard	271
	28.14	Runtime	272
	28.15	Diagnostics - Network Resources	
	28.16	Storage media	274
	28.17	/ Alarm Manager	
	28.18	3 Svstem	
		28.18.1 System-Usage	
		28.18.2 System Information	
		28.18.3MQTT debug list	279
29	Firm	ware update via the USB interface	280
30	Prog	ramming the mbCONNECT24 portal configuration via the USB interface	
31	Facto	ory settings when delivered	
	31.1	IP address of the mbNET	
	31.2	User name and password - for access to the mbNET Web Interface	
32	Load	factory settings	283
33	Devi	ce restart (Reset)	

34	Annex		
	34.1	Set computer address (IP address) in Windows 10	285
	34.2	Modem initialization (AT commands)	287
	34.3	Country codes for devices with analogue modem	289

## 1 General

#### Purpose of the documentation

This document describes the installation, use and functions of the mbNET Router MDH810 - MDH859. The document serves as a reference guide. Please read carefully and keep in a safe place.

#### Validity

The document is valid for industrial routers *mbNET* (MDH810, MDH811, MDH814, MDH815, MDH816, MDH819, MDH830, MDH831, MDH834, MDH835, MDH841, MDH849, MDH850, MDH855, MDH858, MDH859) - from firmware version V 6.2.4 and from hard-ware version HW02\*

The SIMPLY.connect\*\* function is only available for devices with the Simplify3 logo\*

\* see device rating plate.

\*\* SIMPLY.connect is a web application that helps you to set up a device (mbNET) in the Remote Service Portal *mbCONNECT24*. More information is available at: https://simplyconnect.mbconnectline.com/



#### Prerequisite/additionally required components

- · Standard Windows PC with network card
- USB stick recommended format: FAT32 or ext3; recommended maximum size: 4 GB (FAT32), 16 GB (ext3)
- Internet access

#### Additionally required software

If you run *mbNET* as a portal server device in the remote service portal *mbCONNECT24*:

- mbCONNECT24 from version V 2.4 mbCONNECT24 is the central portal for secure remote maintenance via the Internet.
- mbDIALUP \* from version V 3.8 remote client to establish a secure VPN connection to the mbCONNECT24 portal.
- mbCHECK \* from version V 1.1.2 The program checks, among other things, whether at least one of the TCP ports 80TCP, 443TCP or 1194TCP in the firewall is enabled. At least one of these ports is required by mbDIALUP and the device (mbNET/mbSPIDER) in connection with mbCONNECT24.

\* Current version can be downloaded at: www.mbconnectline.com.

#### **Related documents**

#### Getting started with mbCONNECT24

This document describes the first steps and measures necessary to get a device (mbNET router/ mbSPIDER data modem) connected via the Remote Client (mbDIALUP) to the portal server mbCONNECT24.

#### Current manuals and other information

The latest manuals and more information about products related to secure remote maintenance can be found in the download portal at www.mbconnectline.com

Version	Date	Comments	
V 6.0.0	Mar. 12 <sup>th</sup> , 2018	Start-Version	
V 6.0.0 DR01	Oct. 11 <sup>th</sup> , 2018	Wiring diagrams for I/O terminals added (Chap.: "View at the top of the de- vice").	
V 6.0.5	Jan. 17 <sup>th</sup> , 2019	Note on the increase of the random access memory to 512 MB and the re- sulting possibility to use the optional <i>mbEDGE</i> functions for devices as of hardware version HW03 (Chap.:"Technical data"). Add the "HTTP proxy, skip the certificate check" option if the outgoing con- nection uses an HTTP proxy server (Chap.: "System > CTM (Configuration Transfer Manager)")	
VEDE	Apr Oth 2010	Add the IoT function in the Quickstart section	
V 6.0.6       Apr. 9th, 2019       Add the IoT function in the Quice         Add the SNAT (WAN) feature in       Correction of the description in the source of the description of the source of the s		Add the SNAT (WAN) feature in Security Settings > Firewall General. Correction of the description in chapter Security Settings > > WAN-LAN (configuration of the firewall rules) > LAN-WAN (configuration of the firewall rules) > Forwarding "Input of ranges" in the input fields for IP addresses and "Input of ranges or enumerations" in the input fields for ports. Add the description "SD Access from network" (System > Memory De- vices) Extended functionality under System > Firmware. Add the submenus IoT and RoKEY in the Extras section.	
V 6.0.8	Jun. 19 <sup>th</sup> , 2019	<ul> <li>Add connection and termination examples for serial interfaces in RS 485</li> <li>2- and 4-wire operation. See Chapter:</li> <li>"Pin assignment serial interfaces COM1/COM2 (front of device)"</li> <li>Note on "Last error message" when the red Stat LED lights up.</li> <li>See Chapter: "Front view of device"</li> <li>Add the description for the menu "IO-Manager".</li> <li>See chapter: "IO-Manager"</li> </ul>	

#### **Release note**

Version	Date	Comments
V 6.1.0	Oct. 1 <sup>st</sup> , 2019	Note on the function SIMPLY.connect in the chapters
		<ul> <li>"General &gt; Validity"</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>"Display, controls and connectors" &gt; "Front view of device"</li> </ul>
		The chapter ""Maintenance"" has been added, with the remark to check at regular in-tervals the actuality of the firmware installed on the device.
V 6.1.1	Dec. 5 <sup>th</sup> , 2019	As of FW 6.1.1, the mbNET can function both as an NTP client and as an NTP server. See "System > Settings > NTP Settings"
V 6.1.2	Mar. 11 <sup>th</sup> , 2020	Correction of the current consumption: old = 1300 mA => new = 500 mA Add the performance data for new LTE module, for devices with hardware version HW04.
V 6.1.3	Apr. 22 <sup>nd</sup> , 2020	Add the processor performance data in the technical data.
V 6.1.4	July 6 <sup>th</sup> , 2020	Add the transmission power of radio modules in the technical data.
V 6.2.0	Oct. 19 <sup>th</sup> , 2020	General revision Additions to the menu: Extras > IoT (mbEDGE)
V 6.2.0 DR01	Mar. 17 <sup>th</sup> , 2021	General corrections, update / change of the encryption method and en- cryption algorithms.
V 6.3.0	Aug. 11 <sup>th</sup> , 2021	General corrections Change / extension of the technical data

## Use of open source software

#### General

Our products include, among other things, open source software, which is manufactured by a third party and has been published for free use by anyone. The open-source software is available under special open-source software licences and copyright of third parties. In principle, each customer can use open source software free of charge under the licence terms of the respective manufacturers. The customer's right to use the open source software for purposes other than those for which our products were intended is regulated in detail by the relevant open source software licences. The customer may freely use the open source software as set out in the respective valid licence, beyond the intended purpose of the open source software in our products. In the event that there is a contradiction between the licensing terms of one of our products and the respective open source software licence shall take priority over our licensing terms if the respective open source software is affected by this.

Use of the open source software is free of charge. We do not charge any usage fees or similar charges for the use of open source software included in our products. Customer use of open source software in our products is not part of the profit that we obtain from the contractual remuneration. All open source software programs contained in our products are in the available list. The most important open source software licenses are listed in the Licences section at the end of this publication.

If programs that are included in our products are under the GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), the Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD), the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), or other open source software license, which requires that the source code be made available, and this software was not already supplied with our product on a disk or in the source code, we will send this at any time upon request. If we are required to send this on a disk, there will be a flat rate charge of €35.00. Our offer to send the source code upon request, shall automatically end 3 years after delivery of the respective product to the customer.

Requests must, where possible, be sent to the following address with the product's serial number: MB connect line GmbH Fernwartungssysteme · Winnettener Str. 6 · 91550 Dinkelsbühl GERMANY Tel. +49 (0) 98 51/58 25 29 0 · Fax +49 (0) 98 51/58 25 29 99 · info@mbconnectline.com

#### **Special liability provisions**

We assume no responsibility or liability if the open-source software programs included in our products are used by customers in a manner that no longer corresponds to the purpose of the contract which serves as the basis for the purchase of our products. This applies in particular to any use of the open source software programs outside of our products. The warranty and liability provisions, which stipulate the applicable open source software license for the contractual purpose. In particular, we are also not liable if the open source software in our products or the entire software configuration in our products is changed. The warranty contained in the contract, which forms the basis for the purchase of our products, applies only to unchanged open source software and the unchanged software configuration in our products.

#### Open source software used

For a list of the open source software used in our products, visit https://www.mbconnectline.com/down-loads/open-source-software-licenses.txt.



## 2 Information about cyber-security

To prevent unauthorized access to facilities and systems, observe the following security recommendations:

#### General

- Periodically ensure that all relevant components meet these recommendations and any additional internal security policies.
- Perform a security assessment of the entire system. Use a cell protection concept with suitable products.

For example, "ICS-Security-Kompendium" from the BSI (Federal Office for Security in Information Technology, Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik) https://www.bsi.bund.de/SharedDocs/Downloads/DE/BSI/ICS/ICS-Security\_kompendium\_pdf.html

shortened URL: http://bit.ly/1rP9znm

#### **Physical access**

• Restrict physical access to security-relevant components to qualified personnel.

#### Security of the software

- Keep software/firmware updated.
  - ° Stay informed about security updates for the product.
  - Stay informed about product updates.

You can find information about this at: www.mbconnectline.com

#### Passwords

- Define rules for the use of the devices and assigning passwords.
- Change passwords regularly, to increase security.
- Use only passwords with a high password strength. Avoid weak passwords such as "password1", "123456789".
- Make sure that all passwords are protected and inaccessible to unauthorized personnel.
- Do not use the same password for different users and systems.

## 3 Warning signs

The following information signs and signal words are used in this document:

NOTICE

Note - indicates a potentially dangerous situation that can lead to property damage if not avoided.

TIP

A tip indicates additional information and guidance, for example on cyber security, which facilitates secure use of the system.

## 4 Security information

#### General

- mbNET industrial routers are only used as part of an overall system.
- A machine operator is responsible for compliance with the specific application and regionally applicable safety and accident prevention guidelines.
- When configuring the application, specific and local safety and accident prevention guidelines must be observed.
- EN 60204-1 / IEC 204 compliant emergency stop devices must remain effective in all operating modes of the machine system. There must be no undefined restart of the system.
- Faults that occur in the machinery, which can cause material or personal damage, must be intercepted by additional external devices. These devices must ensure a safe operating state in case of failure. Such devices include electromechanical safety switches, mechanical interlocks, etc.
- This manual is intended for project engineers, users and installers who use the mbNET Industrial router. The operation of the mbNET industrial router and the signalling functions should be explained to users. Installers should be provided with all the necessary data for installation.
- mbNET industrial routers are used only in connection with a complete system. For this reason, the standards, safety and accident prevention guidelines for each application should be observed by the project engineer, users and installers. The automation system operator is responsible for complying with these guidelines.

#### Intended use

mbNET industrial routers should only be used as described in the manual.

#### Avoid improper use!

Safety-relevant functions should not be controlled via the mbNET industrial router alone. Uncontrolled restarts must be completely excluded by programming.



#### **Technical limits**

The product is only intended for use within the technical limits specified in the data sheets.

#### **EN/F Safety instructions**

- Assembly, installation and commissioning of the router should be carried out only by qualified personnel. The respective national safety and accident prevention regulations must be observed.
- The router is built in accordance with the latest technology and all recognised safety rules (see declaration of conformity).
- The router is designed exclusively for use in the control cabinet and with safety extra-low voltage (SELV) in accordance with IEC 60950/EN 60950/VDE 0805.
- The router should only be connected to devices that meet the requirements of EN 60950.
- The router is only intended for use within buildings, not outdoors.
- Never open the router housing. Unauthorized opening and improper repair can be dangerous for users of the router. The manufacturer is not responsible for unauthorized modifications.

#### The warranty becomes void if the device is opened!

 The router should not be disposed of with normal domestic waste in accordance with European standards (WEEE) and the German Electrical and Electronic Equipment Act. The device must be disposed of accordingly.





#### **ATTENTION! Electrostatic discharge!**

Note the necessary precautions when handling electrostatically sensitive components (EN 61340-5-1 and IEC 61340-5-1)!

mbNET routers are maintenance-free units. If an mbNET router is damaged or malfunctions, the device must be taken out of operation immediately and secured against unintended operation.

#### NOTICE

The MDH810, MDH815 and MDH830 should only be operated and connected via telephone systems and not operated directly on the public telephone network.

#### (F) Consignes de sécurité:

- Le routeur est construit selon l'état actuel de la technique et les règles techniques reconnues en matière de sécurité (voir la déclaration de conformité).
- Le routeur doit être monté à un endroit sec. Aucun liquide ne doit pénétrer dans le routeur, car cela pourrait occasionner des chocs électriques ou des courts-circuits.
- Le routeur est uniquement prévu pour l'utilisation dans des bâtiments et non pas à l'extérieur.
- Ne jamais ouvrir le boîtier du routeur. L'ouverture du routeur ou des réparations non adaptées peuvent mettre en danger l'utilisateur du routeur. Le fabricant n'assure aucune garantie concernant les modifications arbitraires.

#### La garantie devient caduque en cas d'ouverture de l'appareil !

 Conformément aux prescriptions européennes et à la loi allemande relative à l'électronique et les appareils électroniques, il est interdit de mettre au rebut l'appareil avec les déchets domestiques normaux. L'appareil doit être éliminé dans le respect des prescriptions.



#### AVERTISSEMENT

Les modèles MDH810, MDH815 et MDH830 doivent être utilisés et raccordés uniquement via des centrales téléphoniques. Il est interdit de les faire fonctionner directement sur le réseau téléphonique public.

## 5 Maintenance

Our devices are maintenance-free units. If a device shows signs of damage or malfunctions, the device must be put out of operation immediately and secured against unintentional operation.

## NOTICE

Regardless of the maintenance-free hardware, there is a need for action in terms of IT security.

- Keep the software / firmware up to date.
- Note the "Information about cyber-security".
- Keep yourself informed about security updates of the product.

Information can be found at: www.mbconnectline.com

## 6 Legal notice

#### **Qualified personnel**

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by personnel qualified for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are persons who, due to their training, experience, instruction in and knowledge of the relevant standards, regulations and accident prevention regulations have been authorized by the person responsible for the safety of the machine to carry out the required activities and who have the ability to recognize and avoid potential hazards.

#### Intended use

The device should only be used as described in the manual.

#### Limitation of liability

All technical information, data and notes about installation, operation and maintenance contained in the operating instructions are provided under consideration of our previous experience and findings to the best of our knowledge. No claims may be derived from the information, figures and descriptions in this operating manual. MB connect line GmbH assumes no liability for damages due to:

- Non-compliance with these instructions
- unintended use
- · technical changes

Subject to content and technical modifications.

#### Trademarks

The use of a trademark and company logo not shown here is not an indication that it is freely available for use.

Devices with LTE (4G) modems - AT&T (MDH 850 AT&T, MDH 855 AT&T, MDH 858 AT&T, MDH 859 AT&T)

#### NOTICE

Device types MDH 850 AT&T, MDH 855 AT&T, MDH 858 AT&T, MDH 859 AT&T bear no CE marking and may not be used or put into operation in the European economic area (EEA)!

## 7 Functional overview

#### **Brief description**

mbNET industrial routers offer maximum flexibility with maximum security.

**mbNET** industrial routers are specifically designed for industrial use. They enable secure and reliable connection of machines and systems over the Internet. They support various security protocols and are universally applicable. However, their full capacity is revealed when they are connected to the **mbCONNECT24** remote service platform.

The built-in firewall ensures optimum access protection by only enabling remote access by identified and authenticated users.

With a variety of interfaces and device drivers, *mbNET* industrial routers provide enormous flexibility for remote maintenance of different control systems, drives, control panels, frequency converters and other modules.

The router is configured via the *mbconnect24* portal (mymbCONNECT24.mini, -.midi, -.maxi, -.hosted, -.vir-tual) or the web interface of the router.

#### Performance features:

- Fully configurable using Web interface via locally connected computer, or remotely via *mbCO-NENCT24*.
- Deployable worldwide using different modem connections, (analog, mobile broadband) plus access via LAN and Internet.
- Secure connection using an integrated firewall with IP filter, NAT and port forwarding, VPN with AES (256-, 192-, 128-Bit), Blowfish (128-Bit), 3DES (168-Bit), DES (56-Bit) encryption, and authentication via pre-shared key (PSK), static key or certificate (X.509).
- Alarm management:
  - Fully configurable digital inputs and outputs, and the ability to send via email, SMS or Internet dial-up.
  - Via remote output switching in the event of a fault or with an active Internet connection.
- Integrated server secures all settings, keys and certificates and allows data sharing within the network via connected USB flash or connected SD card.
- Variable RS232, RS485, RS422 RS interface or optional MPI/PROFIBUS for connecting control systems.
- Dual LEDs for a more detailed display on the function and status display.
- As of firmware version 6.0.5, all *mbNET* routers, as of hardware version HW03, can use the optional *mbEDGE* \* function.

\* **mbEDGE** is a software kit that makes it possible to extend the **mbNET** industrial router to an Edge Gateway. More information about **mbEDGE** can be found at www.mbconnectline.com

## 8 Technical data

#### mbNET<sup>®</sup> Industrial router

MDH 810, MDH 811, MDH 814, MDH 815, MDH 816, MDH 819, MDH 830, MDH 831, MDH 834, MDH 835, MDH 841, MDH 849, MDH 850 EU, MDH 850 AT&T, MDH 855 EU, MDH 855 AT&T, MDH 858 EU, MDH 858 AT&T, MDH 859 EU, MDH 859 AT&T - from hardware version: **HW 02** You can find the hardware version on the device rating plate.

#### Housing dimensions



Image 1: Devices and interfaces vary depending on the device type.



#### **Release note**

Version	Date	Comment	
V 6.2	Feb. 26 <sup>th</sup> , 2020	Previous version: V 6.0 from June 4 <sup>th</sup> , 2019 Correction of the current consumption: old = 1300 mA => new = 500mA Add the performance data for new LTE module, for devices with hardware version HW04.	
V 6.2 DR01	Apr. 22 <sup>nd</sup> , 2020	Add processor performance data.	
V 6.2 DR02	July 6 <sup>th</sup> , 2020	Adding the transmission power for radio modules.	
V 6.2 DR03	Feb. 8 <sup>th</sup> , 2021	Update / change of the encryption method and encryption algorithms.	
V 6.2 DR04	July 14 <sup>th</sup> , 2021	Adding the performance data for devices with Wi-Fi module from HW 05.	
V 6.3.0	Aug. 11 <sup>th</sup> , 2021	Adding the performance data for devices with LTE module (EU) from HW 05.	

#### **General Data**

Performance data			
Voltage === V (DC)	10 – 30 V DC (ext. power supply or SELV power supply, 10-30 V DC, Max. 4		
Current consumption	max. 500 mA @ 24 V		
Dissipated power	max. 6 W		
Random access memory	Devices <b>uo to</b> hardware version <b>HW02</b> : <b>256</b> MB Devices from hardware version <b>HW03</b> : <b>512</b> MB		
Processor	Devices <b>up to</b> hardware version <b>HW03</b> : ARM Cortex <sup>®</sup> -A8 up to <b>600MHz</b> Devices <b>from</b> hardware version <b>HW04</b> : ARM Cortex <sup>®</sup> -A8 up to <b>1GHz</b>		
IP Protection class	IP 30* * at full occupancy of all connections and interfaces. Alternatively, unused interfaces can be covered with dust protection plugs.		
Area of use	Dry environment		
Temperature (operating)	-40 – +75 °C		
Temperature (storage)	-40 – +85 °C		
Humidity	0 – 95% non-condensing		
Real-time clock	In the event of a power failure, the date and time are maintained for up to 7 days (depending on the ambient temperature).		
Dimensions (max.)	48 mm x 137 mm x 140 mm (W x D x H)		
Weight (max.)	650 g		
Housing/material	Metal		
Installation	DIN-top hat rail mounting		

#### I/Os and standard interfaces

Digital inputs	4 pieces, 1030 V DC (electrically isolated), (low 0 – 3.2 V DC, high 8 – 30 V DC)
Digital Outputs	2 pieces, 10-30 V DC (electrically isolated), to a maximum of 1.5 A per output
LAN interfaces	4 pieces, 10/100MBit/s full and half duplex operation, automatic detection patch ca- ble/cross-over cable (auto detection)
USB interfaces	USB Host 2.0
SD card slot	For SD cards (32.0 mm × 24.0 mm × 2.1 mm) SDHC max. 32 GB; FAT/FAT32

NOTICE

As of firmware version 6.0.6 and hardware version from HW03, all devices can use the *mbEDGE* function.

#### VPN

VPN protocol	IPsec/PPTP/OpenVPN, 64 Tunnel	MDH 810, MDH 811, MDH 814, MDH 830, MDH 831, MDH 834, MDH 850 EU, MDH 850 AT&T, MDH 855 EU, MDH 855 AT&T
VPN protocol	OpenVPN, 1 Tunnel	MDH 815, MDH 816, MDH 819, MDH 835*, MDH 841, MDH 849, MDH 858 EU, MDH 858 AT&T, MDH 859 EU, MDH 859 AT&T

Encryption method	AES (256-, 192-, 128-Bit), Blowfish (128-Bit), 3DES (168-Bit), DES (56-Bit)
Hash algorithms	SHA-2 (SHA-256, SHA-512), SHA-1, MD5
Authentication	Pre-Shared-Key, X.509
	*can only be operated with my / mbCONNECT24.

#### Network / security

Firewall	1:1 NAT, IP-Filter, port forwarding, stateful inspection
IP router	NAT-IP, TCP/IP routing, IP forwarding
Services	DHCP server, DHCP client, DNS server, NTP client, PPP server, DynDNS
Time levelling	NTP server

#### **Optional Interfaces**

WAN interfaces	10/100MBit/s full and half duplex operation, automatic detection patch cable / cross-over cable (auto detection)
Interface 1 (COM1)	RS-232/485 (software-switchable)
Interface 2 (COM2) - device-dependent -	RS-232/485 (software-switchable) or MPI/PROFIBUS - 12 MBit/s
SIM card slots	2 pieces SIM card reader with ejector (for mini-SIM)



## Communication

## Devices with LTE (4G) module EU (MDH 850 EU, MDH 855 EU, MDH 858 EU, MDH 859 EU)

Devices with hardwar	re version HW 05
Target region	EMEA
GSM/GPRS/EDGE	900 (B8), 1800 (B3) MHz; max. 236 kbps
HSxPA	900 (B8), 1800 (B3), 2100 (B1) MHz; Downlink max. 42 Mbps, Uplink max. 5,76 Mbps
LTE	800 (B20), 900 (B8),1800 (B3), 2100 (B1), 2600 (B7), 700 (B28A) MHz; Downlink max. 150 Mbps, Uplink max. 50 Mbps
RF parameters	

TAC 3	5162610	
• 4G (FDD & TDD): 23dBm @1RB		
• 3G/TD-SCDMA: 24dBm		<ul> <li>-108 dBm @ 2G</li> <li>-113.5 dBm @ 3G</li> <li>-103 dBm @ 4G FDD (BW=5 MHz)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>2G: LB: 33 dBm; HB: 30 dBm</li> </ul>		
Output power - typical values for max output level		Sensitivity - typical sensitivity levels

Devices with hardware version HW 04	
Countries where used	Europe
GSM/GPRS/EDGE	900 (B8), 1800 (B3) MHz; max. 236 kbps
HSxPA	900 (B8), 2100 (B1) MHz; Downlink max. 42 Mbps, Uplink max. 5,76 Mbps
LTE	800 (B20), 900 (B8),1800 (B3), 2100 (B1), 2600 (B7) MHz; Downlink max. 150 Mbps, Uplink max. 50 Mbps
Transmit output power	CLass 3 (0.2 W, 23 dBm) @ LTE CLass 3 (0.25 W, 23 dBm) @ 3G Class 4 (2 W) @ GSM 900 Class 1 (1 W) @ DCS 1800
Antenna connections	2 pieces SMA socket
TAC	35162207

Devices with hardware version up to HW 03		
Countries where used	Europe, Australia	
GSM/GPRS/EDGE	900, 1800 MHz; max. 236 kbps	
HSxPA	850, 900, 2100 MHz; Downlink max. 42 Mbps, Uplink max. 5.76 Mbps	
LTE	800 (B20), 1800 (B3), 2600 (B7) MHz; Downlink max. 100 Mbps, Uplink max. 50 Mbps	

Devices with hardware version up to HW 03		
Transmit output power	Class 4 (2 W, 33 dBm) @ GSM 850 / 900 Class 1 (1 W, 30 dBm) @ GSM 1800 / 1900 Class E2 (0.5 W, 27 dBm) @ EDGE 850 / 900 Class E2 (0.4 W, 26 dBm) @ EDGE 1800 /1900 Class 3 (0.25 W, 24 dBm) @ UMTS Class 3 (0.2 W, 23 dBm) @ LTE	
Antenna connections	2 pieces SMA socket	
TAC	35985205	

# Devices with LTE (4G) module - AT&T (MDH 850 AT&T, MDH 855 AT&T, MDH 858 AT&T, MDH 859 AT&T)

NOTICE

Device types MDH 850 AT&T, MDH 855 AT&T, MDH 858 AT&T, MDH 859 AT&T bear no CE marking and may not be used or put into operation in the European economic area (EEA)!

Countries where used	North America
GSM/GPRS/EDGE	850, 1900 MHz; max. 236 kbps
HSxPA	1900 (B2), 850 (B5) MHz; Downlink max. 21 Mbps, Uplink max. 5.76 Mbps
LTE	1900 (B2), AWS 1700 (B4), 850 (B5), 700 (B17) MHz; Downlink max. 100 Mbps, Uplink max. 50 Mbps
Transmit output power	Class 4 (2 W, 33 dBm) @ GSM 850 / 900 Class 1 (1 W, 30 dBm) @ GSM 1800 / 1900 Class E2 (0.5 W, 27 dBm) @ EDGE 850 / 900 Class E2 (0.4 W, 26 dBm) @ EDGE 1800 /1900 Class 3 (0.25 W, 24 dBm) @ UMTS Class 3 (0.2 W, 23 dBm) @ LTE
Antenna connections	2 pieces SMA socket
FCC	Contains FCC ID: R17LE910NA

Wi-Fi	IEEE 802.11b/g/n	
Frequency bands	2.4 GHz, channel 1 - 13* (2.412 GHz - 2.472*)	
Channel bandwidth	20 MHz	
Data rates	802.11b	1, 2, 5.5 and 11 Mbps
	802.11g	6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 and 54 Mbps
	802.11n	MCS0-MCS7 (max 72.2Mbps)
Hardware supported Encryptions/Decryption	AES/CCMP	P, AES/CMAC, WAPI, WEP/TKIP
Max. output power	19 dBm EIRP**	
Max. sensitivity	-97 dBm EIRP**	
FCC	FCC ID: XPYLILYW1 IC: 8595A-LILYW1	
IC	IC: 8595A-LILYW1	

#### Devices with Wi-Fi module (MDH 811, MDH 831, MDH 841) from HW 05

\* Maximum, depends on the region. \*\* RF power including maximum antenna gain (3 dBi).

## Devices with Wi-Fi module (MDH 811, MDH 831, MDH 841) up to HW 04

Devices with Wi-Fi modem (MDH 811, MDH 831, MDH 841)		
Wi-Fi	IEEE802.11b/g & 802.11n (1T1R mode), up to 150 MBit/s	
Wi-Fi specification	<ul> <li>EU (2.412 GHz-2.472 GHz, 1-13 Channel)</li> <li>USA (2.412 GHz-2.462 GHz, 1-11 Channel)</li> <li>WPA/WP2, 64/128/152bit WEP, WPS</li> <li>802.11b: 1, 2, 5.5, 11 Mbps</li> <li>802.11g: 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps</li> <li>802.11n: (20 MHz) MCS0-7, up to 72 Mbps</li> <li>802.11n: (40 MHz) MCS0-7, up to 150 Mbps</li> </ul>	
Transmit output power (typical)	11b: 19+/- 1.0 dBm @ 11 Mbps 11g: 16+/- 1 dBm @ 54 mbps 802.11n: (HT20), 15 +/- 1dBm, 802.11n: (HT40), 15 +/- 1dBm	
Receive sensivity (typi- cal)	11b: -84dBm @ 11 Mbps; 11g: -70dBm @ 54 Mbps 802.11n: (HT20), -66 dBm @ MSC7, (HT40), -62 dBm @ MSC7	
Antenna connection	1 piece RP SMA socket	
FCC	Contains FCC ID: YWTWFXM05	

Countries where used	Global
GSM/GPRS/EDGE	850, 900, 1800, 1900 MHz; Downlink max.296 kbps, Uplink max. 236.8 kbps
HSxPA	800/850, 900, AWS 1700, 1900, 2100 MHz; Downlink max. 21 Mbps, Uplink max. 5.76 Mbps
Transmit output power	Class 4 (2 W, 33 dBm) @ GSM 850 / 900 Class 1 (1 W, 30 dBm) @ GSM 1800 / 1900 Class 3 (0.25 W, 24 dBm) @ UMTS Class E2 (0.5 W, 27 dBm) @ EDGE 850 / 900 Class E2 (0.4 W, 26 dBm) @ EDGE 1800 / 1900
Reception sensitivity	-108 dBm @ UMTS -107 dm @ GSM 850 / 900 MHz -106 dBm @ DCS1800 / PCS1900 MHz
Antenna connection	1-piece SMA socket
FCC	Contains FCC ID: R17HE910
TAC	35613607

## Devices with UMTS (3G) module (MDH 814, MDH 819, MDH 834, MDH 849)

## Devices with analogue modem (MDH 810, MDH 815, MDH 830)

Countries where used	240 countries
Modulation types	V.21, V.22, V22bis, V.23, V.32, V.32bis, V.34
Data compression	V.42bis, MNP5
Error correction	MNP 2-4, V.42 LAPM
Dialling procedure	MFV/IWV
Modem port	RJ11 socket
FCC	Contains Part 15 & Part 68



The router is designed to be mounted on DIN top hat rails (in accordance with DIN EN 50 022) and for installation in a control cabinet.

The installation and assembly must be carried out according to VDE 0100/IEC 364.

The router may be only mounted vertically as described.

#### NOTICE

Non-compliance with the minimum distances can destroy the device at high ambient temperatures!



Markings / Listings / Certifications

CE PROG. CNTLR.

Certificates (CE, UL, etc.) can be downloaded at www.mbconnectline.com.

E482663

SIMPLIFIED EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

MB connect line GmbH hereby declares that the radio system type MDH 811, MDH 814, MDH 819, MDH 831, MDH 841, MDH 834, MDH 849, MDH 850 EU, MDH 855 EU, MDH 858 EU, MDH 859 EU corresponds to the 2014/53/EU directive.

A copy of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: www.mbconnectline.com

## 9 Scope of Supply

Check the package contents for completeness:

	All types	of devices		
		Duck start up guide		
1 x <i>mbNET</i> industrial router (Fig. representative)	1 x Ethernet cable 1:1, 2 m Item No.: 8.002.201.00.00	1 x Quick S Item No.: 8.	tart Guide 002.701.03.00	1 x Device ID card Item No.: 8.002.707.00.00
Device type	es with analogue modem		Device ty	pes with GSM modem
MDH 810	); MDH 815; MDH 830		MDH 814; MD MDH 850; MD	0H 819; MDH 834; MDH 849; DH 855; MDH 858; MDH 859
<i>a</i> <b>a</b>				

	E CON	
1 x telephone cable RJ11 - RJ11	1 x TAE adapter	1 x GSM antenna
Item No.: 8.02.113.00.00	Item No.: 8.002.112.00.00	Item No.: 8.002.101.00.00

Device types with Wi-Fi modem	NOTE:
MDH 811; MDH 831; MDH 841	
	If one of these parts is missing or damaged, contact the following address:
	MB connect line GmbH
	Winnettener Str. 6
	D-91550 Dinkelsbühl, Germany
	Tel.: +49 (0)9851/58 25 29 0
1 x Wi-Fi antenna; Item No.: 8.002.107.00.00	Fax: +49 (0)9851/58 25 29 99

Keep the original box as well as the original packaging material in case you need to send the device in for repair at a later date.

## 10 Display, controls and connectors

#### 10.1 Front view of device



#### Function / status LEDs

LED	LED colour	LED Status	Description
Fc1	Orange	off	No data traffic on COM1 - incoming
		flashes	Data traffic on COM1 - incoming
	Green	off	No data traffic on COM1 - outgoing
		flashes	(slowly 1 Hz) Data traffic on COM1 - outgoing
		flashes	(very fast 5 Hz) after the device starts with factory settings: <i>SIMPLY.connect</i> * ready but <b>disabled</b> . This means: The SIMPLY.connect function is supported by the device. As long as the func- tion is not activated by pressing the Dial Out button, the device remains in "normal mode" and no further action takes place. If you do not want to use the Simply.connect function, simply ignore this display.
		on	SIMPLY.connect* ready and activated. Activation takes place by pressing the Dial Out button. The device tries to establish a connection to the SIMPLY.connect server. This function is only available if the device is set to its factory settings.
Fc2	Orange	off	No data traffic on COM2 - incoming
		flashes	Data traffic on COM2 - incoming
		on	For MPI: Bus communication OK
	Green	off	No data traffic on COM2 - outgoing
		flashes	Data traffic on COM2 - outgoing For MPI: Data traffic on the bus
Fc3	Orange	off	GSM devices: no reception
		flashes	GSM devices: Blink frequency 1 Hz == $20 \% - 50 \%$ reception quality
	Green	off	GSM devices: Reception quality display depends on Fc4



LED	LED colour	LED Status	Description
		on	GSM devices: Fc3 green + Fc4 green: 71 % – 100 % reception quality
Fc4	Orange	off	GSM devices: no reception
		flashes	GSM devices: Fc4 orange + Fc3 orange): 1Hz == 51 % – 70 % reception quality
	Green	off	GSM devices: Reception quality display depends on Fc3
		on	GSM devices: Fc4 green + Fc3 green: 71 % – 100 % reception quality
Rdy	Orange	off	Waiting for bootloader or signature successfully tested
		on	Checks signature, loads kernel
	Green	off	Waiting for kernel
		flashes	System loading rootFs
		on	Boot process complete, the device can be used.
Con	Orange	off	No VPN connection started
		on	Internet connection is established + VPN connection is started
		flashes	Blink frequency 1.5 Hz: VPN connection is established
	Green	off	No Internet connection
		flashes	Blink frequency 3 Hz: Internet connection is started
		on	Internet connection is established
Pwr	Green	off	The power supply to the router is interrupted/the router is not connected to the power supply.
	Green	on	The power supply is connected to the terminal box and switched on.
Stat	Red	flashes	Error in memory
		on	Error found The error type can be viewed on the WebGUI of the mbNET under <b>System&gt; Info&gt; "Last error message"</b> .
	Green	on	In conjunction with the mbCONENCT24 portal: User is connected to the device.

\*SIMPLY.connect is a web application that helps you to set up a device (mbNET)

in the Remote Service Portal mbCONNECT24.

To activate the function, press the Dial Out button until Fc1 lights up.

If you do not want to use SIMPLY.connect, simply ignore the flashing LED Fc1.

More information is available at: https://simplyconnect.mbconnectline.com/



#### Interfaces

Designation	Status	Description
WAN	-	WAN port on the router (customer network, DSL modem,)
	green flashes	Network connection available
WAN LED	orange flashes	Network traffic active
LAN 1 - 4	-	Local network connection (e.g. machine network)
LAN-LED	green flashes	Network connection available
<b>1 – 4</b> (Dual LED)	orange flashes	Network traffic active
USB	-	Connection for USB stick
COM1	-	COM1 port for connecting devices with RS232/RS485, RS422 interface.
COM2	_	COM2 port for connecting devices with RS232/RS485, RS422 interface, or depending on the router type, devices with MPI /PROFIBUS interface.

#### Button

Designation	Description
Dial out	This button is used among other things, to
	<ul> <li>a) establish an Internet or VPN connection (keep the button pressed until the LED Con starts flashing) or</li> </ul>
	b) activate the SIMPLY.connect function, wenn LED Fc1 is flashing (5 Hz).
Reset	After pressing the button, the router is restarted (cold start).

#### 10.2 View at the top of the device





Circuit diagram **with** galvanic isolation of X1 and X2



Circuit diagram **without** galvanic isolation of X1 and X2

#### 10.3 View of underside of device

Devices with LTE (4G) modem	Туре	Equipment
SD Card SIM 1 SIM 2 Div. Main	MDH 850 MDH 855 MDH 858 MDH 859	<ol> <li>1 x SD card slot</li> <li>2 x SIM card slot</li> <li>2 x SMA socket for GSM antenna (MIMO)</li> </ol>





Devices with analogue modem	Туре	Equipment	
<b>SD Card</b>	RJ11 connector	MDH 810 MDH 815 MDH 830	1 x SD card slot 1 x RJ11 socket

Standard devices	Туре	Equipment	
SD Card		MDH 816 MDH 835	1 x SD card slot

## **11** Interface assignment

## 11.1 Pin assignment of terminal blocks X1 and X2 on the top of the device

- Connection 0. VDC / device housing	
I4 Digital input E4 (10 - 30 VDC)	1 I
I3 Digital input E3 (10 - 30 VDC) X1 I X2	1 1
12 Digital input E2 (10 - 30 VDC)	1
I1         Digital input E1 (10 - 30 VDC)         + - I4 I3 IZ II P MI0Z0I	
P         Secure Voltage 10 - 30 VDC	←(A)
M Connection 0 VDC	
O2 Digital output A2 (max. 1.5 A)	
O1 Digital output A1 (max. 1.5 A)	

## 11.2 Pin assignment of the RJ11 socket on the bottom of the device

ISDN	Analogue
Not assigned	Not assigned
TX+	Not assigned
RX+	Lb/b
RX-	La/a
TX-	Not assigned
Not assigned	Not assigned
	ISDN Not assigned TX+ RX+ RX- TX- Not assigned



## 11.3 Pin assignment serial interfaces COM1/COM2 (front of device)

Pin	RS 232	RS 485	MPI	
1	DCD Data Carrier Detect	Not assigned	Not assigned	COM1/COM2
2	RxD Receive Data	RxD- Receive Data	GND 24 V	0
3	TxD Transmit	TxD+ Transmit Data	Data line B	Ō.
4	DTR Data Terminal Ready	+ 5 volts (4-wire operation only)	Send request	
5	Signal Ground	Signal Ground	GND 5 V (200 mA)	
6	DSR Data Set Ready	Not assigned	5V output	9- <b>10 1</b>
7	RTS Request To Send	TxD– Transmit Data	24 V power input	
8	CTS Clear To Send	RxD+ Receive Data	Data line A	0
9	RI Ring Indicator	Not assigned	Send request	



In RS 485 mode, terminations must be carried out using terminating resistors in accordance with the number of conductors.

Below you can see example circuits for 4-wire and 2-wire operation.



Image 2: Connection example for the 4-wire operation



Image 3: Connection example for the 2-wire operation

#### 11.4 Pin assignment LAN/WAN port on front of device

Signal
TX+
TX-
RX+
Not assigned
Not assigned
RX-

12345678

## 11.5 Pin assignment USB port on front of device

234

	Signal
1	VCC (+ 5 V)
2	– Data
3	+Data
4	GND
## 12 Router Installation

### Installation position/minimum clearances

The router is designed to be mounted on DIN top hat rails (in accordance with DIN EN 50 022) and for installation in a control cabinet.

The installation and assembly must be carried out according to VDE 0100/IEC 364.

The router may be only mounted vertically as described.

NOTICE

Non-compliance with the minimum distances can destroy the device at high

ambient temperatures!



### Top hat rail mounting



Click the router into the DIN top hat rail. To do this, attach the upper guide to the top hat rail and then press the router down against the top hat rail until it fully engages.

## **13** Starting the router

## NOTICE

Before you connect the router to a network or a PC, make sure that the router is properly connected to the power supply. Otherwise, other devices may be damaged.



1 Connect the equipotential bonding to the grounding screw on the top side of the router.

**Note** that the grounding screw and the device housing with the 0 V potential of the power supply are electrically connected to terminal X1.

2 Connect the power supply (10-30 V DC) to terminals X1 of the router.

### NOTICE

### Ensure polarity is correct!

- 3 Now, switch on the power supply.
  - After switching on the power supply, the **PwrLED** is permanently lit.
  - After about 90-120 seconds (depending on the device type), the Rdy LED is permanently lit.
- 4 The *mbNET* is now ready for operation.

TIP

You can obtain further information about the *mbNET* industrial router and support on our homepage in the Support-Forum at www.mbconnectline.com

## 14 Connect router to configuration PC

You can access the web interface of the mbNET directly via a PC.

Requirement:

- · PC with network card
- Internet browser (HTML5 compatible)
- The IP address of the computer must be in the same network as the mbNET - 192.168 in this case. 0 . X (X = variable) - and not be occupied by any other network user.
- The netmask must be 255.255.255.0.

eneral	
You can get IP settings assigr	ned automatically if your network supports
this capability. Otherwise, you	u need to ask your network administrator
for the appropriate IP setting	s.
Obtain an IP address au	tomatically
Obtain an IP address au	tomatically
Use the following IP add	ress:
Obtain an IP address au	tomatically
© Use the following IP add	ress:
IP address:	192 . 168 . 0 . X
Obtain an IP address au	tomatically
Obtain an IP address au	ress:
IP address:	192 . 168 . 0 . X
Subnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0

### NOTICE

The step-by-step guide on how to perform the required settings on a PC can be found in the appendix of this document.

When your mbNET is ready for operation (LED Pwr + Rdy light up), connect the PC to one of the LAN interfaces of the device. To do this, use the supplied network cable.



#### 15 Calling up the mbNET web Interface

Start the Web browser on your PC and type the required IP address of the router in the address bar.

#### Factory setting is: 192.168.0.100



NOTICE

Please note that access to the web interface is possible only via the HTTPS protocol (https://192.168.0.100).

Log in to the router -Factory setting is:

User name: admin

### Password:

You will need the individual device password (Default Password). The device password can be found on the back of the mbNET.

USER: admin DEFAULT PASSWD: 47mxfFQrJ4



	🗅 MDH855 - Login 🛛 🗙
÷	→ C ☆ https://192.168.0.100/login
	mbNET
J	Login
	Username
	Password
	Password
	Log in

## 16 First Start



When you first start the device web interface, you can choose how you want to use your mbNET in the future:

### Cloudserver

When selecting "Portal Server" the *mbNET* is linked to the *mbCONNECT24* portal and configured and operated from there.

If you want to preconfigure the *mbNET* to connect to the *mbCONNECT24* portal, click on the "Cloud-server" button.

The following menu allows you to specify the connection data with which *mbNET* can log on to the portal, to "pick up" its provided portal configuration.

### NOTICE

This step is optional and can be skipped because the mbNET can be configured directly from the mb-CONNECT24 portal.

To cancel this operation, simply unsubscribe from the web interface (*admin > Logout*).

Information about the benefits of using mbCONNECT24 can be found on our website www.mbconnectline.com or contact your MB connect line distribution partner.

### Classic Router

Selecting "classic router" creates a separate router without connecting to the mbCONNECT24 portal. Configuration of the mbNET is done completely via the device web interface. It is also possible to create your own VPN connections.

By clicking on the "classic router" button, you will be automatically redirected to the mbNET configuration interface, where you can configure the mbNET fully for its intended use.

### NOTICE

A decision about whether you want to operate in the mbNET portal or as a classical router can only be changed by resetting to the factory setting.

## 17 Portal server - First start

#### Setting the connection data to the Cloudserver (optional)

NOTICE

This step is optional and can be skipped because the mbNET can be configured directly from the mbCON-NECT24 portal.

To cancel this operation, simply logout from the web interface (*admin > Logout*).

Information about the benefits of using mbCONNECT24 can be found on our website www.mbconnectline.com or contact your MB connect line distribution partner.

mbNET	admin 🗄
Device type: MDH855 () - Serial nu	umber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality: ()
First Start	(?)
Portalserver select here if you want to use this unit with a cloudserver Portalserver	Classic Router select here if you want to use this unit as a classic router Classic Router

Use the Cloudserver to configure the mbNET for a connection

- a) to the Internet and
- b) to the mbCONNECT24 portal.

With this connection data, once mbNET is connected to the Internet and can establish a connection to the mbCONNECT24 portal, it can "pick up" its configuration provided in the portal.

Requirements:

- · You have a mbCONNECT24 user account
- and you have created the mbNET as a new device (with its serial number) in your user account.

NOTICE

You can get support with the configuration of your mbNET in the mbCONNECT24 portal

- in the mbCONNECT24 online help
- or in our help desk.



## 17.1 Internet - Configuring the Internet connection

First Start		
		Device type: MDH855 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality: 🗾 🔤 🔤
Internet		
Enter the settings that are necessary for the internet connection!		
Internetverbindung	External Router/Firewall 🔻	
	External Router/Firewall	
	DSL	
	Modem	
	WiFi	
s	External Router/Firewall DSL Modem WiFi	

Image 4: the selection may vary depending on the device type

Here, you can select how to connect to the Internet. And click on "Next".

Depending on the device type, the selection is

- External Router/Firewall
- DSL
- Modem
- Wi-Fi

### 17.1.1 External Router/Firewall WAN settings

### Interface type selection

Options are:

- DHCP
- Static

First Start	
	Device type: MDH855 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality:
WAN	
Enter your WAN Settings for the ethernet-internet connection	
Interface Type DHCP  DHCP DHCP Static	
Back Next	

### DHCP

If interface type **DHCP** is selected, the router receives its connection information such as IP address and subnet mask via DHCP.

No further settings are required.

Clicking on "Next" will take you to the Portal Server settings.

### Static

If interface type Static is selected, enter your WAN settings for the Ethernet-Internet connection.

First Start		
		Device type: MDH855 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality:
WAN		
Enter your WAN Settings for	the ethernet-internet connection	
Interface Type	Static *	
WAN IP Address	192.168.1.100	
Subnetmask	255.255.255.0	
Gateway	192.168.1.1	
Back Next		

Designation	Description
Interface type	Selection field for the interface type: - DHCP - Static
WAN IP address	Enter the WAN IP address.
Subnet mask	Define the subnet mask.
Gateway	Enter the IP address of the gateway.

## 17.1.2 DSL Settings

First Start		
DSL		Device type: MDH855 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality: ()
PPP Type		
User	User	
Password	Password	
Password confirmation	Password confirmation	
Back Next		

Designation	Description	
РРР Туре	Selection field for the PPP-type: • PPPoE enable Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet. Protocol used to connect via ADSL to the Internet.	
	<ul> <li>PPTP enable Point-to-Point Tunnelling Protocol. Protocol used for a transmission method with tunnelling.</li> </ul>	
User	Enter the user name and password for your point-to-point connection. This information is provided by your Internet Service Provider (ISP).	
Password		
Password Confir- mation		

## NOTICE

If you use this setting, then the router expects that a DSL modern is directly connected to the WAN interface!

## 17.1.3 Modem Connection Settings

First Start		
	De	rice type: MDH855 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality: 📰 🖬 🗐 ()
Modem		
Enter your WAN Settings for	the modem-internet connection	
Network (Provider)	United Mobile	Y
APN (Access Point Name)		
SIM Pin	0	
User	user	
Password	••••	
Back Next		
Desite setting De		

Designation	Description	
Network (provider)	Selection field for the service provider	
APN (Access Point Name)	Enter the APN of your provider here, if necessary.	
SIM Pin	Enter the SIM PIN of the SIM card used.	
User	If pagagany, optor your upor pama and pagaward	
Password		



## 17.1.4 Wi-Fi Connection Settings

First Start		
WiFi Enter your WAN Settings for	De the wifi-internet connection	vice type: MDH831 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 13188310034248 - Signal Quality: (0
SSID		
Authentication Mode	WPA2PSK •	
Encryption Mode	AES V	
WLAN - Key		
Interface Type	Static •	
WLAN IP Address		
Subnetmask		
Gateway		
Back Next		

Description
Enter the name of the Wi-Fi network to which the device should connect.
Select the authentication method from the drop-down list.
Select the encryption method from the drop-down list.
Enter the authentication key.
Selection field for the interface type <ul> <li>DHCP</li> <li>Static</li> </ul>
Enter the WAN IP address.
Define the subnet mask.
Enter the IP address of the gateway.

# 17.2 Portal Server - Settings

First Start			
		Device type: MDH855 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 05188550432873 - Signal Quality:	0
Portalserver			
Cloudserver settings			
Cloudserverlist	rsp.mbCONNECT24.us (US/CAN) 🔻		_
Host address or DNS	rsp.mbCONNECT24.us		
Session-Key			
Portalserver Certificate	Browse No file selected.		_
Back Next			

Designation	Description
List of portal servers (For more informa- tion see the "mbCON- NECT24 Server List" table)	List of available portal servers: • Europe • USA/Canada • rsp.mbconnect24.net (EU) • rsp.mbconnect24.us (US/CAN) • rsp.mbconnect24.asia (ASIA) • rsp.au.mbconnect24.net (AU) • User defined
Host address or DNS name	The matching host address of the portal server selection will be shown here. When you select " <b>User defined</b> " you must enter the host address or DNS name of your portal server.
Session Key	If you have set a session key when providing the portal configuration, you must enter the session key here.
Portal Server Certificate	When you select " <b>User defined</b> " from the list of portal servers, you can select a CA certificate here. Self-issued certificates must be previously integrated in the setup menu of the router (System > Certificates).
Click"Next" to complete	the setup.

mbCONNECT24 server list		
Server name	Host Address or DNS Name	Note
Europe	vpn2.mbconnect24.net	mbCONNECT24 V1* - server location: Europe
USA/Canada	vpn.mbconnect24.us	mbCONNECT24 V1* - server location: USA
rsp.mbCONNECT24.net (EU)	rsp.mbCONNECT24.net	Remote-Service-Portal mbCONNECT24 <b>V2</b> ** - server location: Europe

Table 1: mbCONNECT24 server list

mbCONNECT24 server list		
rsp.mbCONNECT24.us (US/ CAN)	rsp.mbCONNECT24.us	Remote-Service-Portal mbCONNECT24 <b>V2</b> ** - server location: USA
rsp.mbCONNECT24.asia (ASIA)	rsp.mbCONNECT24.asia	Remote-Service-Portal mbCONNECT24 <b>V2</b> ** - server location: Asia
rsp.au.mbCONNECT24.net (AU)	rsp.au.mbCONNEC- T24.net	Remote-Service-Portal mbCONNECT24 <b>V2</b> ** - server location: Australia
User defined	customer-specific	mymbCONNECT24

Table 1: mbCONNECT24 server list

\* mbCONNECT24 V1 is the previous version of V2 and will not be developed further. However, continued unlimited support and a permanent security upgrade will be provided where the technology allows.

\*\* The Remote-Service-Portal mbCONNECT24 V2 is the current version for secure remote maintenance, data acquisition, M2M communication and networking via the Internet.

### 17.3 Finish - Apply settings

### Save changes

First Start	
	Device type: MDH831 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 13188310034248 - Signal Quality: (0)
Finish	
Click on "Apply Changes" to Save and Enable the Settings on the D	Device.
Apply changes	
Back	

Save the settings by clicking on "Save Changes".

## Complete

First Start			
			Device type: MDH831 (6.0.3) - Serialnumber: 13188310034248 - Signal Quality: 🚺 (0)
Finish			
Click on "Apply Changes" to	o Save and Enable	the Settings on the De	evice.
🖺 Apply changes			
Take over Firststart configuration	•	wait	
Internet	•		
СТМ	•		
last configuration check			
Redirect to Cloudstatus page	e	🖺 Complete	
		9	
Back			-

Click"Complete" to complete the process.

You will be taken to the "**Cloudstatus Page**" (**Quick start**). Here you can find information (including connection errors and their cause) for each connection to the Internet, and the Portal Server.

## 18 Quick Start - Cloud Status Page

## 18.1 Quick Start

MDH831WiF		admin	:
Quickstart Diagno	osis loT		
<ol> <li>MDH831</li> <li>2.</li> </ol>	Gerätetyp: MDH831 (6.0.3) - Seriennummer: 13188310034248 - Signalstärke: • WLAN : IP Adresse : 192.168.2.179 Subnetzmaske : 255.255.255.0 Gateway : 192.168.2.253 DNS : 172.25.255.250, 8.8.8.8, 172.25.255.250 © WLAN Protokollierung • WAN (DHCP) IP Adresse : Subnetzmaske :		(-69 dBm )
3.	Gateway : 172.25.255.253 DNS : 172.25.255.250, 8.8.8.8, 172.25.255.250 Firmwareversion : 6.0.3 Datum/Uhrzeit lokal : Thu Jun 21 10:47:21 UTC 2018		
4.	Diagnose © Erweiterte Protokollierung		
5.	© Firewall © Support Daten		

This display appears

- a) each time you call up the mbNET web interface, if you have created the mbNET as a portal device
- b) from the configuration interface via the "admin" Menu

Here, you can detect connection errors and determine the cause. To obtain more detailed information, click on the respective icon.

If there is an error during connection or in the network settings, a red triangle is displayed. If it is correctly configured, the points are shown with a green tick.





## 18.2 Diagnosis

MDH831	WiFi		admin 🚦	?
Quickstart	Diagnosis	IOT Device type: MDH831 (6.0.3) - Se	erialnumber: 13188310034248 - Signal Quality: 🗾 🔲 (-	67 dBm )
Ping				_
google.com			▶ Ping	
TraceRoute				-
google.com			► TraceRoute	
NS Lookup				-
google.com			► NS Lookup	
тсрримр				-
-i eth0 not po	ort 443		► TCPDUMP	
Return Messa	ige			_

traceroute to google.com (172.217.23.174), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets ltraceroute: sendto: Operation not permitted

#### Image 5: Diagnostic example with executed command: Route monitoring

Designation	Description
Ping	After entering an internet address or an IP address, you can use the ping command (Click on the " <b>Ping</b> " button) to determine whether the corresponding address is accessible. Among other things, for example, you can easily determine whether an Internet connection exists.
Route monitoring	This command provides you with detailed information about the network connection between the mbNET and a remote host or other routers. Route monitoring is carried out and made visible here.
DNS names resolve (nslookup)	With this function, you can check whether name resolution (https://www.google.de = 216.58.209.206) takes place. If after executing the command "DNS name resolve(nslookup)" no result is output, check whether in your mbNET a DNS server address is entered under network-DNS, or if the DNS server of your network is accessible.

Designation	Description
TCPDUMP	In order to closely monitor the network traffic, you can use the " <b>TCPDUMP</b> " command. Some examples of the use of this command are:
	<ul> <li>-i eth0 not port 80         Displays all TCP/IP connections to the (-i) LAN (eth0) interface, except (not) those using Port 80 (port 80) when incoming or outgoing.     </li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>-i eth1 port 23         Displays all TCP/IP connections to the (-i) WAN (eth1) interface using Port 23         (port 23) when incoming or outgoing.     </li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>-vvv -i eth1         Displays all traffic in verbose mode, Level3 (-vvv) on the (-i) WAN (eth1) inter- face.     </li> </ul>
	You can find detailed TCPDUMP documentation at www.tcpdump.org
Port Check	You can use this function to check the status of a port (open / not open) in connection with an Internet or IP address.

## 18.3 IoT

MDH831WiFi		admin 🚦 ?
Quickstart Diagnose	loT	
		Gerätetyp: RKH210 (6.0.6) - Seriennummer: 08192100042754
Informationen		
Seriennummer		E000016
		advance
Docker		
Service		Aktiviert
Daemon		•
Docker Management		
Service		Deaktiviert
Link zu User Interface		% Management
Flows und Dashboard		
Service		Aktiviert
Daemon		•
Link zu Flows(Node-Red)		% Flows
Link zu Dashboard(Node-Red)		<b>%</b> Dashboard



Here you can see an overview

- of the serial number and the license type of the *mbEDGE* SD card used
- of the status of the IoT service (Docker)
- of the Docker Management Status
- of the status of activation for Flows and Dashboard

Click on the "Flows" button to get to the NodeRed working environment.

Use the "Dashboard" button to call up a previously created dashboard.

### NOTICE

Information on the configuration and setting options of **mbEDGE** can be found in the relevant manual on https://www.mbconnectline.com/de/support/downloads.html

## 19 Classic router - configuring the mbNET via the web interface

If you use the *mbNET* as a classic router, the complete configuration and setup is performed via the web interface of the device.

### 19.1 Description of the graphical user interface (configuration interface)

mbNET	MD Syste	<b>H83</b> m > In	1WiFi fo <sup>(1)</sup>	đ	5)					f) admin : e) ?
a)	Info	СТМ	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
System	Sys	stem				<b>c</b> )				
Network	Devi	ce type			MDH8	31				
Serial	Seria	alnumb	er		13188	310034248				
Security Settings	Firm	ware ve	ersion		6.0.1					
VPN	Host	name			mbNE	т				

Image 6: Basic structure of the graphical user interface

a)	Main Navigat	tion	First-level navigation for the operational user interface.							
b)	Subnavigatio	'n	Second-Level-Navigation							
C)	Display/work	area	Here, you will perf	Here, you will perform all the configuration settings.						
d)	Breadcrumb	navigation	Displays the user	and branch within the user interface.						
e)	Help button		Link to online help	o for devices.						
f)	User navigat	ion	Navigation for the	Navigation for the administrative user interface.						
	Logout Quickstart Reboot	admin >	Log out	This is where you log out of the system properly. In addition, a timer is displayed. If there is no activity on the surface, you will be logged out automatically after the preset time (60 minutes). Clicking on the timer will reset it to 60 minutes.						
	Language English •		Quick start/ Administration	Link to "Quick Start"/to configuration Interface						
			Reboot	If you click on this link, <i>mbNET</i> will be restarted.						
			Language	Selection field for the user language of the web interface The options are: German and English						

## 19.2 Description of buttons, icons and fields

Here, you will find an overview of the display elements, input/selection fields and buttons.

Symbol	Description					
٠	<b>Display element- greyLED</b> example: a link is inactive, a cable or USB device is not connected, Output1 is inactive etc.					
	<b>Display element- greenLED</b> example: a link is active, a cable or USB device is connected, Output1 is active etc.					
•	<b>Display element- redLED</b> <b>example:</b> inactive connection, WAN cable is not plugged in, etc.					
	Checkbox for enabling/disabling the associated function.					
	Input field for manual input of information/values.					
S7_ISOTCP	Selection field/Drop-down list to select a predefined value/parameter.					
ľ	The Editbutton can be used to change input/values in an element/row.					
Ð	<b>Button</b> for adding a new element (e.g. a new rule in the security settings or new VPN connection)					
×	An element/row is deleted by clicking the Deletebutton.					
Save	Clicking on the <b>"Save" button</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>However</b> , <b>the changes are not active</b> .					
Close	Clicking on the "Close" button discards the current input/changes.					
	NOTICE					

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

<u>Apply changes</u>	Clicking on the " <b>Save changes</b> " <b>button</b> will apply all stored settings/changes and store them permanently on the router.
Clear Changes	The "Discard changes "button will reset/discard all temporarily stored settings/changes.

## 20 System - settings and basic router configuration

Here, you will find general system information and settings.

mbNET	MDH831WiFi										admin 🚦
		m > In									?
	Info	СТМ	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware	
System	Sec	tom									
Network	Davi	o turno			MDUe	21					
Serial	Device type Serialnumber			MDH831 13188310034248							

Under the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{System}}$  menu the following submenus are listed:

Submenu	Description
Info	General system information
CTM*	Configuring the CTM (Config Transfer Manager).
Settings	General system configuration (e.g. time and mail settings).
Website	HTTPS access configuration in the <i>mbNET</i> web interface.
User	User management (password and rights management)
Certificates	Creating and managing certificates.
Storage media	Configuring the USB port and SD card slots.
Logging	Settings for the logging function.
Configuration	Backing up and restoring the device configuration.
Firmware	Updating the Firmware (firmware upgrade).
	* The CTM function is only relevant if you are running the <i>mbNET</i> in the mbCONNECT24 portal (Cloudserver). This function is described in the mbCONNECT24 online help.

## 20.1 System > Info

System > Info						?
Info CTM Einstellungen	Web Benutzer	Zertifikate	Speichermedien	Protokollierung	Konfiguration	Firmware
System						
Device type	MDH855					
Serialnumber	27198160046	490				
Firmware version	6.2.4					
Hostname	mbNET					
last error message	[Mar 22 09	9:55:52] > : CM	AE Error [10]: SIM n	ot inserted		
Network						
Interface	Cable		IP Address		MAC Address	
LAN	•		192.168.0.100	)	70:B3:D5:8D:90:0	26
WAN	•		172.16.20.191	L j	70:B3:D5:8D:90:0	27
Internet						
External Router/Firewal	ι 🕚 ο	onnection es	tablished			
Interfaces						
Interface	RS-Type		Driver		Port	
COM1	RS232		Allen Bradley	19200	7001	
COM2	MPI/PROFIB	US	MPI/PROFIBU Driver	JS Network	7002	
Flash drive			SD Card			
•			•			

Image 7: Example display, content can vary depending on the type of device.

System	Here you will find information about									
	Device type									
	Serial number									
	Firmware version									
	Device name in the network									
	Warnings or/and the most recent error are also displayed here.									
Network	Here you will find information about									
	<ul> <li>Interface LAN and WAN displays which network ports are linked/connected at the moment to the existing net- work via the corresponding sockets. An existing connection is indicated by a green icon.</li> </ul>									

Internet	Here, you can see
	the selected Internet connection
	<ul> <li>External Router/Firewall</li> </ul>
	° DSL
	° Modem
	° Wi-Fi
	<ul> <li>The connection status         A currently active connection to the Internet is represented by the green LED icon.     </li> </ul>
Interfaces	Here, the current configuration of the COM1 * and COM2 * interfaces is displayed.

menueee							
	If you operate a device with a MPI/PROFIBUS connection, the information will be displayed in COM2.						
	* depending on the type of device and equipment.						
Storage media	Status of the USB port and SD card slot						
	When a USB flash drive and/or an SD card is inserted in mbNET, this is indicated by the green LED symbol.						

## 20.2 System > CTM (Configuration Transfer Manager)

The CTM allows the **mbNET** to transfer the portal configuration via the active Internet connection, i.e. the **mbNET** picks up its configuration from the **mbCONNECT24** portal, as soon as it comes online. In order to ensure the transfer, CTM must be activated on the **mbNET**.

### NOTICE

The CTM function is only relevant if you are running the router in the *mbCONNECT24* portal (Cloudserver). This function is described in the *mbCONNECT24* online help.

Syster	n > CTI	M							?
Info	СТМ	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
СТМ									Ø
CTM is	5		Ina	ctive					
Host a	ddress	or DNS	ctm	.mbcon	nect24.net				

Click the Edit icon is to edit the corresponding function.

СТМ	
Active	No
Host address or DNS	rsp-vpn.mbconnect24.net
Session-Key	
Enable connection through a HTTP proxy	Yes
HTTP proxy, skip the certificate check	
HTTP proxy name	
HTTP proxy port	
HTTP proxy username	
HTTP proxy password	

Save

Close



Designation	Description
Active	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function.
Host address or DNS name	Enter the host address or DNS name.
Session Key	Enter the session key generated by the portal.
Use a HTTP proxy serve as the outgoing connec- tion	r "Yes/No" selection field - select "Yes" if you want to use an HTTPS proxy server as the outgoing connection.
HTTP proxy, skip the cer tificate check	<ul> <li>Check box for enabling/disabling this function.</li> <li>"SSL termination An HTTPS connection can be broken down (scheduled) by means of a web proxy in order to also check its contents for pests. Further encryption to the client (browser) then takes place with a certificate offered by the proxy. The problem with this is that the user of the browser no longer gets to see the original certificate of the web server and has to trust the proxy server that he has taken a validation of the web server certificate."<sup>1</sup> One way to avoid this problem is to enable this feature.</li></ul>
Name of the HTTP proxy server (DNS or IP)	Input field for the host name or the IP address of the proxy server.
Port of the HTTP proxy- server	Input field for the port.
Login name on the HTTP proxy server	User name input field If required, the domain name (domain\username), as well as the authentication method are also here (for "NTLM": User- name#AUTH-NTLM or for "NTLMv2": Enter Username#AUTH-NTLM2).
Login password on the HTTP proxy server	Server password input field
	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

<sup>1</sup> Proxy (Rechnernetz), https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proxy\_(Rechnernetz), 18.01.2018

## 20.3 System > Settings

Syste	m > Set	tings							?
Info	СТМ	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
Sys	tem set	tings							ß
Host	name					mbNET			
Host	Descrip	otion				mbNET			
Auto	matic re	eboot				inactive			
Rebo	ot at					00:00			
Tim	e Settin	igs							Ø
Date	Time (U	ITC)				Mon Jul 20 19:1	9:12 UTC	2020	
Loca	le Date	Time				Mon Jul 20 21:1	9:12 CEST	2020	
Set lo	ocale Da	ate Time							
Time	zone					Berlin,Germany			
NT	Setting	gs							Ø
Time	synchr	onization o	over NT	Р		inactive			
Serv	er addre	ess				0.de.pool.ntp.or	g		
Upda	te inter	val (h)				2			
NTP	Server o	on LAN				inactive			
Mai	I Setting	gs							Ø
Activ	ate auto	omatic Mai	il			Yes			
Dev	ice-API								8
Enab	le MQT	T access to	o status	topcis		No			
Sys	tem Sei	rvices							8
Netw	orkconf	figuration	disable	(Confto	ool)	No			
Simp	lyConn	ect (SC3) s	service	enable		Yes			
Manu	facture	r access e	nable			No			

## In the **Settings** submenu you can configure the following functions:

Function	Description/content
System settings	Assign a device name in the network
	Configure a device reboot
Time settings	Set the local time (date/time)
	Select the time zone
NTP Settings	NTP configuration
	<ul> <li>NTP Server on LAN =&gt; the mbNET acts as an NTP server here.</li> </ul>
Mail Settings	Configuring the "Automatic Mail Setting" function
Device-API	Enable MQTT access to status topcis "No / Yes"

Save

Close

Function	Description/content
System Service	Disable network configuration (Conftool) "No / Yes"
	<ul> <li>SimplyConnect (SC3) service enable "Yes / No"</li> </ul>
	Enable manufacturer access "No / Yes"
Click the Edit icon , to e	edit the corresponding function.

### 20.3.1 System > Settings > System Settings

System settings		
Hostname	mbNET	
Host Description	mbNET	
Automatic reboot		
Reboot at	00:00	

Designation	Description
Hostname	Enter here a name that allows the router to be reached on the network.

NOTICE

The mbNET can only be reached under this Hostname, if the DNS server that is registered on your PC knows the device name and the IP address of the mbNET.

If the DNS server is an mbNET, you must observe the following: In order to reach the network name of the mbNET by a PING from your PC, you'll need to add at the end an (".") (e.g.: ping myrouter.).

Host Description	To better identify the router on a network, you can enter a meaningful description here.
Automatic reboot	Checkbox to activate / deactivate the reboot function.
Reboot at	Enter a time here at which the device is to be restarted automatically. 24 hour format: hh : mm   12-hour format: hh : mm AM / PM

### NOTICE

If there is an active connection for a restart at the specified time, the restart is delayed until the active connection is ended.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

## 20.3.2 System > Settings > Time Settings

Time Settings	8
Date Time (UTC)	Tue Dec 3 15:05:09 UTC 2019
Locale Date Time	Tue Dec 3 16:05:09 CET 2019
Set locale Date Time	2019.02.20-09:02:21
Timezone	Berlin,Germany

Designation	Description
Date/Time (UTC)	Displays the current system time in UTC (Coordinated Universal Time).
Local Date Time	Displays the current system time based on the selected time zone.
Set local Date Time	Displays the system time, which is used, if no automatic time adjustment is to take place, or is not possible. Input format: YYYY.MM.DD-HH:MM:SS
Timezone	Displays the time zone in which the mbNET is operated.

Time Settings		
Set locale Date Time	2019.02.20-09:02:21	
Timezone	Berlin, Germany	
		Save Close

Designation	Description
Date/Time (UTC)	Displays the current system time in UTC (Coordinated Universal Time).
Local Date Time	Displays the current system time based on the selected time zone.
Set local Date Time	Enter the system time here, if no automatic time synchronization is possible or is to take place. Input format: YYYY.MM.DD-HH:MM:SS
Timezone	Select the time zone from the selection field, in which the mbNET is operated.
Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

### 20.3.3 System > Settings > NTP Settings



The Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a standard for synchronizing clocks in computer systems via package-based communication networks. When time synchronization, the NTP client gets the current time from an NTP server.

The *mbNET* can act both as an NTP client and as an NTP server.

NTP Settings	
Time synchronization over NTP	active
Server address	0.de.pool.ntp.org
Update interval (h)	2
NTP Server on LAN	inactive

To change the NTP settings, click the edit icon



Designation	Description
Time synchronization over NTP	Checkbox for enabling/disabling the NTP function. If this checkbox is activated, the mbNET acts as an NTP client.
Server Address	Enter the IP address or the name of the time server (default address: 0.de.pool.nt- p.org). When entering a name, a DNS server must be entered in the network set- tings, or you must be connected to the Internet. The NTP server must be easily ac- cessible.
Update interval (h)	Enter the value for the NTP polling interval (in hours). Input => natural numbers [hr] > 0.
	NOTICE
	When 0 or "blank" is entered, there is no time synchronization.
NTP Server on LAN	Checkbox to activate / deactivate the function. If this function is activated, the <i>mbNET</i> transfers its local system time via an NTP server via the LAN interfaces to devices connected to it.
Savo	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are
Save	not yet enabled.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

### 20.3.4 System > Settings > Mail Settings

In the case of certain events (e.g. from the alarm management) you can send automatically generated messages from the system via email.

Mail Settings					
Activate automatic Mail	No				•
SMTP Server					
SMTP Port	25				
E-Mail address					
SMTP requires Authentification					
User					
Password					
				Save	Close

Here you set whether the *mbNET* should use the mail server of **MB connect line**, with fixed specifications, or whether you want to use your own SMTP server.

Designation	Description
Enable automatic mail settings	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function. If you select "Yes", the router will use the mail server of MB connect line, with fixed specifications. If 'No', you have to enter the information for your mail server (for fur- ther information please contact your service provider).
SMTP Server	Enter the IP address or the name of the SMTP server of your mail provider.
SMTP Port	Enter the port via which the E-mails are sent.
E-mail address	Enter the sender address email address here.
SMTP requires Authentification	Activate the checkbox if the SMTP server requires authentication.
User /Password	In these two fields, enter the login information for your E-mail account.
Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

### 20.3.5 System > Settings > Device-API

The mbNET can be used as an MQTT broker.

Device-API Settings	
Enable MQTT access to status topcis	
MQTT Password	••••••
MQTT-Username	web
Attention: This setting o	ppens Port 1883/TCP on LAN interface
	Save Close

Designation	Description
Enable MQTT access to status topcis	Checkbox zum Aktivieren/Deaktivieren dieser Funktion.
MQTT Password	Mandatory field for entering a password. No default password is specified here.
MQTT-Username	The default username "web" cannot be changed.

### NOTICE

Attention: If this function is activated and the settings are saved, port 1883 / TCP is opened for the LAN interface!

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

After activating the "MQTT access to status topics" function, you can query the values from the "MQTT Debug List" under Status > System.

Status > System						?
کا DynDNS NTP	VPN-OpenVPN	loT Runtim	e Diagnosis	Memory devices	Alarm manager	System
System-Usage	System informat	tion MQT1	Debug List			
Торіс	Va	lue				
/network/lan/state/led	2					
/network/lan/mac	70	:B3:D5:F9:43:E	В			
/network/lan/ip	19	2.168.0.100				

### 20.3.6 System > Settings > System Service

System Services	
Networkconfiguration disable (Conftool)	
SimplyConnect (SC3) service enable	
Manufacturer access enable	

Save

Close

Designation	Description
Disable network config-	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
uration (Conftool)	

### NOTICE

The "Disable Network Configuration (Conftool)" function is only relevant if you operate the router on the portal mbCONNECT24. This function is described in the mbCONNECT24 online help.

SimplyConnect (SC3) service enable	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
	NOTICE
The "SimplyConnect (S CONNECT24 portal.	C3) Activate Service" function is only relevant if you operate the router in the mb-
simply-connect.me.	n about SimplyConnect on our website at www.mbconnectline.com or at https://

Enable manufacturer	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
system access	

NOTICE

Enable this function in a support case when you want to allow the device manufacturer to access the mbNET via SSH. The activation starts the SSH server for the ROOT access to the mbNET, which is handled via PKI.

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

## 20.4 System > WEB

System > Web						?
Info CTM Settings W	eb User	Certificates	Memory devices	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
HTTPS device configuration	on access					
HTTPS Port	443					
System Services						Ø
Enable access to Quickstart WITHOUT credentials	No					
Enable login via GET- Arguments	No					
Disable Communication Webservice (SMS/Email)	Yes					
Disable Web configuration (only changeable via factory settings reload!)	No					

In the Web submenu you can configure the following functions:

HTTPS device configuration access		
Function	Description/content	
HTTPS Port	<ul> <li>Here you can</li> <li>change the default port (443), through which the HTTPS server is accessed.</li> <li><b>Important!</b> If you change the default ports, you must specify the new port in the browser's address bar (e.g.:192.168.0.100:84).</li> <li>upload your own certificate</li> <li>upload a key for the certificate.</li> </ul>	

System Services			
Function	Description/content		
Enable access to Quickstart WITHOUT credentials	This function is only relevant if you operate the router in the mbCONNECT24 portal (Cloudserver). You can find a description of this function in the mbCONNECT24 online help.		
Enable login via GET- Arguments	Checkbox to activate / deactivate this function. Beyond the login, no other parameters are taken into account. https://192.168.0.100/login?username=[USERNAME]&password=[PASSWORD]		
Disable Communi- cation Webservice (SMS/Email)	Checkbox to deactivate / activate the function. If this function is activated, neither an SMS nor an e-mail can be sent from the device.		

System Services	
Disable Web configuration (only	You can disable the complete web configuration here.
changeable via factory settings reload!)	<b>ATTENTION</b> : Once the web configuration is disabled, it can only be restored to its factory settings by rebooting the mbNET.

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  , to edit the corresponding function.
#### 20.4.1 System > Web > HTTPS access for device configuration

System Services	
Enable access to Quickstart WITHOUT credentials	
Enable login via GET- Arguments	
Disable Communication Webservice (SMS/Email)	
Disable Web configuration (only changeable via factory settings reload!)	

Save Close

Designation	Description
HTTPS Port	Here you can change the default port (443), through which the HTTPS server is accessed.
	<b>Important!</b> If you change the default ports, you must specify the new port in the browser's address bar (e.g.:192.168.0.100: <b>84</b> ).
Upload own certificate	Select your certificate using the Browse button button.
Upload own key for certificate	Use the Browse button to select your key for the selected certificate.
Import	The selected files are uploaded by clicking the "Import" button.

### NOTICE

ATTENTION! If you upload a wrong certificate or key it could be possible that the webpage is no more reachable!

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

### NOTICE

#### 20.4.2 System > Web > System Services

System Services	
Enable access to Quickstart WITHOUT credentials	
Enable login via GET- Arguments	
Disable Communication Webservice (SMS/Email)	
Disable Web configuration (only changeable via factory settings reload!)	

Save Close

System Services	
Function	Description/content
Enable access to Quickstart WITHOUT credentials	This function is only relevant if you operate the router in the mbCONNECT24 portal (Cloudserver). You can find a description of this function in the mbCONNECT24 online help.
Enable login via GET- Arguments	Checkbox to activate / deactivate this function. Beyond the login, no other parameters are taken into account. https://192.168.0.100/login?username=[USERNAME]&password=[PASSWORD]
Disable Communi- cation Webservice (SMS/Email)	Checkbox to deactivate / activate the function. If this function is activated, neither an SMS nor an e-mail can be sent from the device.
Disable Web configuration (only changeable via factory settings reload!)	By activating the checkbox, access to the mbNET web interface is completely blocked. ATTENTION: Once the web configuration is disabled, it can only be restored to its factory settings by rebooting the mbNET.
Save	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

#### NOTICE



## 20.5 System > User

Here you can manage the users who have access to the configuration interface of the mbNET.

- By default, the user "admin", is created with all rights.
- The user "admin" is associated with the device password.
- The user "admin" cannot be deleted.

mb	NET									admin 🚦
System	n > User									?
Info	CTM Se	ettings	Web l	Jser Certi	ficates	Memory	devices	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
User	managem	ent								•
User- name	Passwo	rd Fu	ll name	Adminis- tration	Quick- start	Modem Dialin	VPN Dialin	Flows(Node Red) Admin	Docker Management Admin	
admin	******	*** Ad	ministrator		*			¢	Ø.	×

By clicking on the relevant button users can be



## 20.5.1 Added/Edited User

User management			
Username	admin		
Full name	Administrator		
Adminstration			
Quickstart		A.	
Modem Dialin		×	
VPN Dialin		<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	
Flows(Node Red) Admi	n		
Old password			
Change password			
			Save Close

Designation	Description
User name	Mandatory field for entering a user name (for example, User1)
Full Name	Mandatory field for entering a name (for example, Peter Schmidt)
Administration	Check boxes to enable/disable the type of access by the user to the web interface of the mbNET.
Dial-up modem	<ul> <li>Administration =&gt; access via HTTPS</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Dial-up modem =&gt; access via dial-up modem</li> </ul>
v Fin dial-up	<ul> <li>VPN dial-up =&gt; access by dialling through a VPN tunnel</li> </ul>
Flows(Node	<ul> <li>Flows(Node Red) Admin =&gt; access Node-Red and Dashboards</li> </ul>
Red) Admin	<ul> <li>Docker Management Admin = &gt; access the Docker Management</li> </ul>
Docker Manage- ment Admin	
New password	Mandatory field for entering a password
Repeat pass- word	Mandatory field - Retype password

# NOTICE

The password should consist of at least 8 characters, including uppercase letters, numbers and special characters (example: aZ?34%s8).

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.



## NOTICE

## 20.6 System > Certificates

The main component for VPN connections using IPSec or OpenVPN is the trust between two or more communication partners.

An authenticity test is required for secure communications. This is done using PKI (public key infrastructure). Certificates will ensure that the "right" partners communicate with each other. With a certificate, the certificate holder (subject) proves their identity. The certificate may be issued by a higher authority (the Certificate Authority (CA)) or by the certificate holder itself.

The certificate **owner** will therefore be designated as **Subject** and the **certificate** issuer **as** Issuer. Below the screen mask with the tabs of the relevant certificates and the option of importing new certificates.

System	ו > Cer	tificates							?
Info	СТМ	Setting	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
Own	Certifica	ate	CA Certific	ate	Partner Certific	ate CRL			
list of	f impor	ted certi	īcates						•
Name			Subject		lssuer	Va	lid		

In the Certificates menu you see an overview of the imported certificates

- · Own certificate
- CA certificate
- Partner certificate
- CRL (Certificate Revocation List)

Here you can import **1** and delete **1** the appropriate certificates.



#### 20.6.1 Own certificate

Own certificates are used by the certificate holder. These are issued and signed by a higher authority (CA Root Certificate). In order for the mbNET to be able to use its own certificate at a remote terminal so as to show it there, the appropriate PKCS12 file (certificate including private key) must be selected, in order to import this. One or more PKCS12 files can be imported.

#### NOTICE

As an own certificate always has an associated key, a PKS12 file with the file name extension \*.p12 must be used.

An own certificate also always has a key. A PKCS12 file must therefore be imported. This consists of a .crt file and a .pem key file.

A PKS12 file consists of a \* .crt file and a \* key .pem file.

#### 20.6.1.1 Import own certificate

import new certificate

File	Datei auswählen Clientcert1.p12
Name for this certificate (optional)	Clientcert1
Password	
	Import

Designation	Description
File	Click "Select file" and select the required *.p12 file (in this example, "Clientcert1.p12"
Certificate name (op- tional)	The name for the imported certificate can be freely forgiven/changed.
Password	Enter the password that was assigned to this file.

Click Import and then Close.

System >	Certificates			?
Info CT	M Settings Web User Ce	rtificates Memory device	Logging Configu	ration Firmwar
Own Cert	ificate CA Certificate Part	ner Certificate CRL		
list of im	ported certificates			•
Name	Subject	lssuer	Valid	
Clientcert1	C=DE ST=Bayern L=Dinkelsbuehl O=MB OU=Documentation CN=MasterCertificate Address=doku@mbconnectlin	C=DE ST=Bayern L=Hamburg O=CustomerA OU=Service CN=Client1 e.com Address=support@cus	Jun 26 07:52:00 2018 GM Jun 26 07:52:00 2019 GM	T ×

In the overview, you can see certificates imported thus far.

#### 20.6.2 CA certificate (root certificate)

A root certificate verifies that the remote site certificate is signed.

Such a stem cell certificate must be imported, if under the VPN settings "by means of a certificate from the same CA" is selected as the authentication method.

The entry from the root certificate will be used as a criterion to decide whether the certificate of the in-dialling device is valid. The CA certificate contains information about whether the certificate of the remote terminal is valid or not.

The CA certificate is available as \* .crt file and must be imported into the mbNET.

#### 20.6.2.1 Importing CA certificate (root certificate)

import new certificate	2
File	Datei auswählen DocuCertificate.crt
Name for this certificate (optional)	DocuCertificate
	Import
	Close

 Designation
 Description

 File
 Click "Select file" and select the required \*.crt file (in this example: "DokuCertificate.crt"

 Name for this certificate.crt
 The name for the imported certificate can be freely forgiven/changed.

 cate (optional)
 The name for the imported certificate can be freely forgiven/changed.

#### Click Import and then Close.

Info CTM	Settings Web Use	r Certificates	Memory device	Logging Co	nfiguration	Firmwar≽
Own Certifica	te CA Certificate	Partner Certifica	te CRL			
list of impor	ted certificates					•
Name	Subject	Is	suer		Valid	
DocuCertificat	C=DE ST=Bayern L=Dinkelsbuehl e O=MB OU=Documentation CN=MasterCertificate Address=doku@mbco	C= ST L= O: OI CI nnectline.com Ac	DE =Bayern Dinkelsbuehl MB J=Documentation N=MasterCertificat Idress=doku@mb	te connectline.com	Jun 25 06:10:00 2018 GMT Jun 25 06:10:00 2023 GMT	×

In the overview, you can see certificates imported thus far.

#### 20.6.3 Partner certificate (IPSec)

Partner certificates are certificates of the remote terminal. They are only required if the VPN settings "Authentication via partner certificate" have been selected.

In this case, the criterion for deciding the validity of a certificate is that a copy of this partner certificate exists locally.

The certificate of the remote terminal must be selected by the corresponding crt file and then imported. Multiple crt files can be imported.

The entry from the root certificate will be used as a criterion to decide whether the certificate of the in-dialling device is valid. The CA certificate contains information about whether the certificate of the remote terminal is valid or not.

The CA certificate is available as \* .crt file and must be imported into the mbNET.

#### 20.6.3.1 Import partner certificate

import new certificate				
File	Datei auswählen PartnerCertificate.crt			
Name for this certificate (optional)	PartnerCertificate			
	Import			
		Close		

Designation	Description
File	Click "Select file" and select the required *.crt file (in this example: "DokuCertifi- cate.crt"
Name for this certifi- cate (optional)	The name for the imported certificate can be freely assigned / changed.

Click Import and then Close.



System > Certif	ficates					$\langle \rangle$
Info CTM	Settings Web User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging Co	nfiguration	Firmwar≽
Own Certificate	e CA Certificate	Partner Certificat	te CRL			
list of importe	d certificates					+
Name	Subject	lss	uer		Valid	
DocuCertificate	C=DE ST=Bayern L=Dinkelsbuehl O=MB OU=Documentation CN=MasterCertificate Address=doku@mbconr	C= ST: D= OU CN nectline.com Ad	DE =Bayern Dinkelsbuehl MB J=Documentation I=MasterCertificat dress=doku@mbo	e connectline.com	Jun 25 06:10:00 2018 GMT Jun 25 06:10:00 2023 GMT	×

In the overview, you can see certificates imported thus far.

#### 20.6.4 CRL (revocation list)

The recover/revocation list (**C**ertificate **R**evocation **L**ist CRL, for short) checks whether the certificates of indialling computers are valid or not. The CRL contains the serial numbers of certificates that should be blocked. So if one wants to deprive people of permission to dial into the mbNET or the underlying PLC, it is only necessary to create a CRL.

#### 20.6.4.1 Import CRL (revocation list)

import new certificate					
File	Datei auswählen	DocuCertificate.per	n		
	Import				
					Close
Designation	Description				
File	Click "Select cate.pem"	file" and select th	e required *.pen	n file (in this exam	ple: "DokuCertifi-
Click Import and then Info CTM Setting	Close. gs Web User	Certificates N	lemory device	Logging Configu	ıration Firmwar>
Own Certificate	CA Certificate	Partner Certificate	CRL		
list of imported cert	ificates				•
lssuer		Update address	Last update	Next update	
C=DE ST=Bayern L=Dinkelsbuehl O=MB OU=Documentation CN=MasterCertificate emailAddress=doku@n	nbconnectline.com		Jun 27 14:01:00 2018 GMT	Jul 27 14:01:00 2018 GMT	×

In the overview, you can see certificates imported thus far.

## 20.7 System > Memory devices

Syster	n > Mei	mory devic	e						?
Info	СТМ	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
Flas	h drive	SD Card	ł						

## The mbNET has

- a USB port (USB Host 2.0) on the front of the device and
- · an SD card slot on the bottom of the device

#### 20.7.1 USB

You can connect a USB device (USB stick or USB hard drive) to the USB port on the Industrial router. The USB storage medium can be accessed via SFTP.

System > M	emory devi	ce						?
Info CTM	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
Flash drive	SD Care	d						
USB Settin	ngs							
USB Mode		USE	8 Memor	y via SFTP				
USB Acces	s from Netwo	ork						
Active		Inac	tive					
SFTP User		ftp						
USB Devic	es							
USB Device	connected	•						

#### 20.7.1.1 USB Settings

Within USB Settings you can select USB Mode:

• USB Transparent (USBOverIP)

#### NOTICE

USB mode "USB Transparent (USBOverIP)" is only relevant/functional in conjunction with the **mbCON**-**NECT24** Remote-Service-Portal and the Remote Client **mbDIALUP**.

Related settings can only be made via *mbCONNECT24* and *mbDIALUP*.

You can find further information in the *mbCONNECT24* online help.

#### • USB memory via SFTP

#### 20.7.1.2 USB access from the network

USB Access from Network

SFTP User	ftp		
SFTP Password	•••		
SFTP Password confirmatio	on		

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If the checkbox is activated, a connected USB storage medium is integrated by the mbNET.
SFTP User	Input field for the SFTP user name
SFTP password	Input field for the SFTP password
SFTP Password confirmation	Input field for confirmation of the SFTP User Password.

#### NOTICE

To access to the USB-storage medium via SFTP, enter the IP address of the mbNET server, preceded by sftp://....

Example: sftp://192.168.0.100

The default user name is: ftp.

The default password is: ftp.

#### 20.7.1.3 USB devices

You can connect a USB device (USB stick or USB hard drive) to the USB port on the Industrial router. The USB storage medium can be accessed via SFTP.



USB Devices
USB Device connected

A LED icon will display if a USB storage medium is connected to the mbNET or has been detected.

### **USB** Device connected

- Green LED symbol = USB storage medium available
- Gray LED symbol = **No USB storage device connected**

#### NOTICE

Please keep in mind that the connected FAT/FAT32 storage medium must be formatted. With a different file system such as NTFS, it may cause problems.

#### 20.7.2 SD Access from network

SD Access from Network

Active	
SFTP User	nodered
SFTP Password	•••••
SFTP Password confirmation	•••••

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If the checkbox is activated, a connected SD card is integrated by the mbNET.
SFTP User	Input field for the SFTP user name
SFTP password	Input field for the SFTP password
SFTP Password confirmation	Input field for confirmation of the SFTP User Password.

#### NOTICE

To access to the USB-storage medium via SFTP, enter the IP address of the mbNET server, preceded by sftp://....

Example: sftp://192.168.0.100

The default user name is: nodered.

The default password is: nodered.

Save

Close

# 20.8 System > Logging

The system logging of the *mbNET* can be outsourced to another computer using a logging server.

System > Log	ging							?
Info CTM	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory device	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
General								ľ
Set debug out	put to sysle	og Inad	tive					
Log also to US	B-Device	Inac	tive					
Remote Log	ging							
Enable Remot	e logging	Inac	tive					
Remote IP Ad	dress	192	.168.0.1					
Remote Port		514						

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

### 20.8.1 General Settings

General	
Set debug output to syslog	
Log also to USB-Device	

Save Close

Designation	Description
Output debug information to the logging server	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this checkbox is enabled, debug information is output on the logging server.
Also output logging on USB stick	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this checkbox is enabled, the logs are also stored on a USB stick.
Clicking	a on "Sove" tomporarily across the current entries/abangee. But the changes a

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close"</b> discards the current input/changes.



### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

### 20.8.2 External logging (server settings)

Remote Logging	
Enable Remote logging	
Remote IP Address	192.168.0.1
Remote Port	514

Designation	Description			
Enable external logging server	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. When this check box is selected, the system logging of the mbNET is out- sourced to an external computer.			
IP address of the External Logging Server	Enter the IP address of the external logging server here.			
Port of the External Logging Server	Specifies the port number of the Logging Server. Here: Port 514			

#### NOTICE

We recommend not changing this port, unless you have an application that responds to a completely different port.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close"</b> discards the current input/changes.

#### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

Save

Close

## 20.9 System > Configuration (backup and restore)

Here you can download a backup copy of the system configuration (Backup) and, if necessary, restore (Restore).



Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

# 20.10System > Firmware (Firmware update)

System > F	rmware							?
Info CTM	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Memory devices	Logging	Configuration	Firmware
Firmware	Device							
Firmware ve	rsion	6	.2.3					
Active Boot	volume	V	/OL1					
	_							
Firmware	update							ſ
Upgrade Me	thod	A	utoupda	ite server				
Firmware ve	rsion status	S	table					
Available Fi	rmware vers	ion 6	6.2.4 🕚					
Start firmwa	re update		Start					
Progress								
automatic	Firmware ve	rsion cl	neck and	d update				I
Active		Ν	10					

Here you can check the actuality of the installed firmware version and if necessary upgrade to a higher version.

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

Firmware update	
Upgrade Method	Autoupdate server
Firmware version status	Firmware Status: stable
Upgrade Method	Selection box for the upgrade method
	Autoupdate server
	Flash drive
	Network
Firmware version	Selection box for the status of the available firmware
status	stable
	<ul> <li>beta (It is recommended to use the stable status!)</li> </ul>
Start firmware update	By clicking on the button, the firmware update starts with the previously selected settings.

#### automatic Firmware version and update

NIE			
NO			
re is it	No		۲
	re is it	re is No it	re is No it

After activating this function, the actuality of the installed firmware is checked every 24 hours. If a newer version is available on the Autoupdate server, it will be automatically installed.

NOTICE

An automatic update will only take place if "Autoupdate server" was selected when selecting the upgrade method.

The used firmware version status (stable or beta) depends on the previously made selection.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

### 20.10.1 Firmware update

Firmware update		
Upgrade Method	Autoupdate server	٣
Firmware version State	Firmware State: stable	•
Available Firmware version	6-2-4	
	Start	Close



Designation	Description
Upgrade Method	Selection field with the following options:
	<ul> <li>Auto Update Server</li> <li>=&gt; this requires an internet connection to be established.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>USB stick         <ul> <li>+ this requires that a USB stick with the new firmware - in the root directory - is connected to mbNET.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Network</li> <li>=&gt; for this, the mbNET must be accessible on the LAN side.</li> </ul>
Firmware Version Status	<ul> <li>Selection field for the firmware status</li> <li>Firmware Status: Stable</li> <li>Firmware Status: Beta</li> </ul>
Available firmware version	After selecting <b>Upgrade Method</b> and <b>Firmware Version Status</b> , the available firmware version is displayed here.

Click on the **Start button** to perform the firmware update and follow the instructions (for example, perform a device reboot).

# 21 Network - connection settings and options

**mbNET** mbNET ? Network > LAN LAN WAN WLAN Modem Internet DHCP **DNS Server** Hosts DynDNS System Network Routes Serial Ø. Security Settings LAN IP Address 192.168.0.131

Here, you define the connection settings for your mbNET-type.

Image 8: Example display, content can vary depending on the type of device.

#### Under the Network menu the following submenus are listed:

Submenu	Description
LAN	Here you can set the LAN IP address and the subnet mask of the router ( <i>mbNET</i> ). This IP address accesses the router in the LAN. You can also specify both network routes in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) and host routes here.
WAN	Using the <i>mbNET</i> 's WAN interface, you can connect a local network to another local network or a public network, such as the Internet. The WAN interface can be configured depending on the application. Optionally, you can network routes here in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) or define routes to indi- vidual network nodes.
Wi-Fi	Here you specify the interface type (DHCP or static) and configure the interface, if necessary. You can also configure the Wi-Fi connection to a Wi-Fi router or access point.

Submenu	Description
Modem	Here you can configure dial-up or Internet connections, depending on the type of modem (analogue modem or GSM modem).
Internet	For connecting to the Internet, you can configure the <b>mbNET</b> here for the specific connection and depending on certain events.
DHCP	Here you can configure the <i>mbNET</i> as a DHCP server on the LAN or WAN network.
DNS Server	If the <i>mbNET</i> should maintain a connection permanently, you can add your own DNS server here.
Hosts	To answer DNS queries directly, you can click here to assign an IP address to a specific name.
DynDNS	Here, you can set up a public dynamic DNS service.

### 21.1 Network > LAN

Here you can set the LAN IP address and the subnet mask of the router (mbNET). This IP address accesses the router in the LAN network.

You can also specify both network routes in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) and host routes here.

#### 21.1.1 Interface

Here you can set the LAN IP address and the subnet mask of the router (mbNET). This IP address accesses the router in the LAN network.

Network > LAN								
LAN WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Interface	Routes							
LAN Interface	e							2
LAN IP Addres	S	192.168.0.	100					
Subnetmask		255.255.25	5.0					
Network parti	icipants							
Monitors netwo participants	ork	Disabled						

Click the Edit icon to edit the corresponding function.

## **Configuring the LAN Interface**

Here you can set the LAN IP address and the subnet mask of the router (mbNET). This IP address accesses the router in the LAN network.

LAN Interface		
LAN IP Address	192.168.0.131	
Subnetmask	255.255.255.0	
	Save Close	
Designation	Description	
LAN IP address	Enter the IP address for accessing the router.	
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of the network that the router should be integrated into.	

## **Network participants**

Here you can monitor the Network participants.

Network participants							
Monitors network participants	Disabled						
	Save Close						
Designation	Description						
Monitors network par-	Selection box to						
ticipants	Disable						
	Passive						
Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.						
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.						

## NOTICE



#### 21.1.2 Routes

You can also specify network routes in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) and also host routes here.

I	Network > LAN									?		
	LAN	WAN	WLAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS			
_	Inter	face	Routes									
	LAN	Routes									6	•
	IP Add	ress			Gatewa	у						
Cli	Click the Add 🕒 button to add a route.											
Cli	Click the Edit icon 🕼, to edit the corresponding route.											

#### Add LAN route

LAN Routes		
IP Address	Gateway	

Designation	Description
IP address	Enter the network IP address in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) or the host IP address.
Gateway	The gateway to be entered is usually the IP address of the router (mbNET).

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

## NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

After you confirm your entry by clicking on the "Save" button, your entries appear in the overview of the LAN-routes.

Save

Close

#### Edit/Delete LAN route

After you confirm your entry by clicking on the "Save" button, your entries appear in the overview of the LAN-routes.

Network > LAN							?	
LAN WAN WLAN	Modem Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS			
Interface Routes								
LAN Routes						Ø	+	
IP Address	Gatewa	У						
172.27.17.0/24	192.168.	0.100		ľ	×			
172.16.20.158	192.168.	0.100		ľ	×			
Click the Edit icon <i>C</i> , to edit the corresponding entry.								
Save	Clicking on "Save" te not yet enabled.	emporarily	saves the curr	ent entries	s/changes. <b>Bu</b>	t the change	es are	
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " o	discards t	he current input	t/changes.				
		NO	TICE					

### 21.2 Network > WAN

Using the *mbNET*'s WAN interface, you can connect a local network to another local network or a public network, such as the Internet. The WAN interface can be configured depending on the application. Optionally, you can network routes here in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) or define routes to individual network nodes.

#### 21.2.1 Interface - set WAN interface type

Here you can specify the type of interface and configure the interface.

Network	< > WA	N								?	
LAN	WAN	WLAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS			
Interfa	ce	Routes									
WAN In	iterfac	e								Ø	
Interfac	e Type		DHCP								
Click the E	dit ico	n 🕑 to	edit the c	correspond	ling func	tion.					
Select inte	erface	type									
The option	s are										
• DHC	Р										
• DSL											
<ul> <li>Stati</li> </ul>	С										
WAN Inte	rface										
Interface T	уре		DHCP								,
									Save	Close	
Interface	Гуре	Desc	ription								
DCHP		Seleo signs <b>Con</b> t	ct this type s an IP ad t <b>act your</b>	e if a DHC dress to th <b>network a</b>	P server le router administ	is present in (mbNET). rator if nece	the netw ssary.	ork and th	nus autom	atically as-	
DSL		Seleo vides	ct this type s the conn	e if your ro ection to t	uter (mb he Intern	NET) is conn let.	ected dir	ectly to a	DSL mode	em that pro-	
Static											

### **Configuring the WAN Interface**

When selecting interface type Static, you must configure the interface.

WAN Interface			
Interface Type	Static		•
WAN IP Address	192.168.1.100		
Subnetmask	255.255.255.0		
Gateway	192.168.1.1		
		Save	Close

Designation	Description
WAN IP address	Enter the WAN IP address of the router (mbNET).
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of the network that the router should be integrated into.
Gateway	Enter the IP address of the gateway that connects to the Internet.

## 21.2.2 Routes

If further sub-networks are connected to the locally connected network, you can define additional routes here. Here, you can specify network routes in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) or define routes to individual network users.

	Netwo	ork >WA	۹N							?	)
	LAN	WAN	WLAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
	Inter	face	Routes								_
	WAN	Routes								8 +	
	IP Add	lress			Gatewa	у					_
CI	Click the Add button to add a route.										
<u>.</u>	Click the Edit icon 🕼, to edit the corresponding route.										



#### Add WAN route

WAN Routes		
IP Address	Gateway	
		Save Close

Designation	Description
IP address	Enter the IP address for the network routes in CIDR format (x.x.x.0/24) or the IP address of the network subscriber.
Gateway	The gateway to be entered is usually the IP address of the router (mbNET).

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are <b>not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close"</b> discards the current input/changes.

## NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

After you confirm your entry by clicking on the "Save" button, your entries appear in the overview of the WAN-routes.

#### **Edit/Delete WAN route**

After you confirm your entry by clicking on the "Save" button, your entries appear in the overview of the WAN-routes.

Netwo	rk > WA	٨N							?
LAN	WAN	WLAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS	
Inter	face	Routes							
WAN	Doutos								Ø +
WANN	Routes								
IP Add	ress			Gatewa	у				
<b>IP Add</b> 192.16	ress 88.0.0/24	4		<b>Gatewa</b> 192.168.	<b>y</b> 0.100		2	×	

Click the Edit icon *C*, to edit the corresponding entry.

Click the Delete icon **K**, to delete the corresponding entry.

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

# NOTICE

### 21.3 Network > Wi-Fi

Here you specify the interface type (DHCP or static) and configure the interface, if necessary. You can also configure the Wi-Fi connection to a Wi-Fi router or access point.

#### 21.3.1 Interface - set Wi-Fi interface type

Here you can specify the type of interface and configure the interface.

Netwo	rk > WL	AN								?
LAN	WAN	WLAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Inter	face	Settings	ò							
WLAN	l Interfa	ice								Ø
Interfa	се Туре									
Click the	Edit icc	on 📝 to	edit the	correspond	ling func	tion.				
Select in	terface	e type								
The optic	ons are									
• DH	СР									
• Sta	tic									
WLAN In	terface									
Interface	Туре		DHCP							•
									Save	Close
Interface	е Туре	Desc	cription							
DCHP		Sele sign: <b>Con</b>	ct this typ s an IP ad <b>tact your</b>	e if a DHC dress to th <b>network a</b>	P server e router dminist	is present in (mbNET). rator if neces	the netwo	ork and th	us automatio	cally as-
Static		Sele DHC Sele Prov Also Netw	ct this typ P server, ct this typ ider) - e.g note that vork - DNS	e if an exis or no addr e, if you ha ., in the ca with this ty S servers).	ting rout ress assi ave receir se of a d rpe of co	er connects to gnment is spe ved a static a ledicated line. nnection, a D	o the Inte ecified by ddress fr NS serve	rnet and t a server. om your l er must be	his does not SP (Internet e entered (se	act as a Service e Section

Save

Close

Close

Save

# Configuring the Wi-Fi Interface

When selecting interface type Static, you must configure the interface.

WLAN Interface	
Interface Type	Static •
WLAN IP Address	
Subnetmask	
Gateway	

Designation	Description
Wi-Fi IP address	Enter the Wi-Fi IP address of the router (mbNET).
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of the network that the router should be integrated into.
Gateway	Enter the IP address of the gateway that connects to the Internet.

### 21.3.2 Wi-Fi Settings

You can configure the wireless connection to a wireless router or access point here.

WLAN Settings		
SSID		
Authentication Mode	WPA2PSK	۲
Encryption Mode	AES	T
WLAN - Key		
Extended Settings	No	τ

Designation	Description
SSID	Wireless router or access point name.



Designation	Description
Authentication mode	<ul> <li>OPEN</li> <li>With this authentication, each mobile station can connect to a Wi-Fi access point, if the SSID match each other. Some Wi-Fi clients know the ALL or ANY options for establishing a connection to each access point regardless of the SSID, provided it is configured as "Open System".</li> <li>SHARED</li> <li>With this authentication, the access point and the mobile station must use the same WPA2 password. If the password does not match the set password, then the access point denies the authentication of the station. A connection cannot be established in that case.</li> <li>WEPAUTO</li> <li>The setting is not unique. It can have different effects depending on the manufacturer or access point. The authentication setting is usually not done by setting the option. Details about the encryption, the code and maybe the encryption strength have to be provided.</li> <li>WPAPSK</li> <li>WPA-PSK is an encryption method that sends data by a pattern, which completely changes the signal. It can be read only if you also have the same pattern with the key (code/key), which you can determine yourself.</li> <li>WPA2PSK</li> <li>WPA2-PSK is the implementation of a high safety standard according to the Wi-Fi standards. It is the successor to WPA and one of the most secure methods of encryption.</li> <li>WPANONE</li> <li>No authentication</li> </ul>
Encryption method	NONE No encryption AES AES decryption necessarily requires that the same steps as for encryption must be taken, but in reverse order. In some ways, this is a weakness of AES. WEP WEP is an encryption method based on an RC4 encryption. This is a secure key stored in any Wi-Fi-enabled device, which should not be known to anyone and also not traceable. WEP provides functions for packet encryption and authentication. It is considered outdated and relatively insecure. TKIP TKIP uses the same algorithm as WEP. TKIP also ensures that each data packet gets a different key. Packages that do not fit the algorithm will be discarded immedi- ately.
Wi-Fi key	Enter the Wi-Fi key for the wireless router or access point.
Advanced settings (Expert)	Selection field <b>No/Yes</b> If you select Yes, you can perform more/detailed settings.

# Advanced settings (Expert)

Extended Settings	Yes
Operating Frequency	Channel 1-13
Operating Band	Band 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136, 140, 149, 155 🔻
Channel	1
B/G Protection	Auto
RTS Threshold	2347
Frag Threshold	2346
Wmm Capable	Disabler WMM 🔹

Designation	Description			
Operating fre- quency	Selection field for setting the channels. Depending on how many devices and base stations need to share the frequency spectrum, you can use the channel settings to split the 2.4 GHz frequency range. Channels 1-11 - This considers Channels 1-11 Channels 1-13 - This considers Channels 1-13 Channels 10,11 - This considers Channels 10 and 11 Channels 10-13 - This considers Channels 10-13 Channels 3-9 - This considers Channels 3-9 Channels 5-13 - This considers Channels 5-13			
Operating band	Selection field for the operating band to be used according to IEEE 802.11 Standard			
Channel	Selection field for the default channel to be used Auto: The default channel is 1-11: Here you can select a channel from 1 to 11.			
Protected Mode in B/G	The Protected Mode selection field Auto always ON always OFF			
RTS threshold val- ue	Request-to-send: The RTS is a handshake protocol to prevent data collisions. If the device detects a slower packet, it asks in advance, before the packet is sent. The process can slow down the data throughput. A value of 500 is recommended during use.			
Threshold query	Frequentiation effects the data throughout Here you can get the product size into			
mesnoù query	which the data packets will be fragmented. Default value is 2346 bytes.			
WMM enabled	Selection field if WMM certification is active or inactive. Active WMM: WMM Certification Active Inactive WMM: WMM certification inactive			
Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.			
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.			



## NOTICE

## 21.4 Network > Modem

The built-in mbNET modem (analogue or GSM) is provided for dial-up and/or Internet connections if no corresponding DSL or network connection is available.

NOTICE

If the modem is used for an outgoing internet connection, no incoming connection can be made.

#### 21.4.1 Analogue modem configuration

Network > Modem					?			
LAN WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Modem Sett	Modem Settings							Ø
Modemtyp		ANALOG						
Modem Init		+GCI=FD						
Modem Init		Хз						
Outgoing Credentials	Incoming	g Call f	3ack					ß
Input select		Phone N	lumber	Use	er		Password	
No		*99***1#	¢.	use	r		******	
Authenticat	ion							
Authenticatio	n via PAP	Yes						
Authenticatio	n via PAP	Yes						
Timeout Dialo	out [s]	300						
# 21.4.1.1 Modem Settings

Network >	Modem							?
LAN WA	N Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Modem S	ettings							Ø
Modemtyp		ANALOG						
Modem Init		+GCI=FD						
Modem Init		ХЗ						

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

Modem Settings	
Modem Init	+GCI=FD
Modem Init	Х3
	Save Close
Designation	Description
Modem initialization	Input field for the country code, the default is +GCI=FD (FD for Europe)
	NOTICE

A list of country codes for devices with analogue modem can be found in the Appendix.

Modem initialization The command X3 (do not wait for dial tone) is preset here.

#### 21.4.1.2 Outgoing (configuration for outgoing connections)

Here, you configure the access data and the authentication for outgoing connections.

Outgoing Incoming	g Call Back			
Credentials				Z
Input select	Phone Number	User	Password	
No	*99***1#	user	*****	
Authentication				
Authentication via PAP	Yes			
Authentication via PAP	Yes			
Timeout Dialout [s]	300			

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

#### Access data (selection of inputs)

Input select	Phone Number	User	Password	
Yes	▼ *99***1#	user	egal	
Value 1				
Value 2				
Value 3				

Save

Close

Selection of in- puts       Selection field no/yes         Select Yes if you want to call several stations.         Three more lines for entering the necessary access data will appear. Each of these ad- ditional lines is selected because of signals to digital inputs I2 to I4.         Now enter the numbers and the user data for the PPP dial-up in the additional fields.         Switch the first and one or two of the other three inputs to begin dialling. Please note that you must first switch one or two of the other 3 inputs before switching the first input	Designation	Description
that you must mat switch one of two of the other 5 inputs before switching the inst input.	Selection of in- puts	Selection field no/yes Select Yes if you want to call several stations. Three more lines for entering the necessary access data will appear. Each of these ad- ditional lines is selected because of signals to digital inputs I2 to I4. Now enter the numbers and the user data for the PPP dial-up in the additional fields. Switch the first and one or two of the other three inputs to begin dialling. Please note that you must first switch one or two of the other 3 inputs before switching the first input.

#### NOTICE

The mbNET acts only as a PPP client. The PPP server must use a different industrial router (mbNET) or a computer that can process the request.



Designation	Description
	Under Network > Internet , set the Internet settings to " <b>On Request</b> " and then switch the option " <b>Connect if the input is active</b> " to input 1.
	<ul> <li>To call the first number =&gt; switch input I1</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To call the second number =&gt; switch input I2 and then input I1</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To call the third number =&gt; switch input I3 and then input I1</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To call the fourth number =&gt; switch input I2+I3 and then input I1</li> </ul>
Phone number	Here, enter the call/dial-in number of the corresponding provider.
User	Enter the user name required to dial the corresponding provider. Further information can be obtained directly from your provider.
Password	Enter the password required to dial in to the corresponding provider. Further information can be obtained directly from your provider.

#### Authentication

Here you can select the authentication protocol for the dial-up connection and set the dial-up timeout.

Authentication			
Authentication via PAP		✓	
Authentication via PAP		✓	
Timeout Dialout [s]	300		

Designation	Description
Authentication via PAP	Authentication protocol with which your login data are transmitted ( <b>P</b> assword <b>A</b> uthen- tication <b>P</b> rotocol). However, we recommend using the secure variant CHAP, as in PAP your password is sent unencrypted.
Authentication us- ing CHAP	Authentication protocol with your login data are transmitted in order to protect this da- ta ( <b>C</b> hallenge <b>H</b> andshake <b>A</b> uthentication <b>P</b> rotocol). CHAP is normally the procedure which is performed when logging on to the internet at the Internet Service Provider (ISP) via a modem.
Timeout when di- alling in [s]	After this set time, the dialling attempt is aborted and a new selection is started.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

Save

Close

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# 21.4.1.3 Incoming

Here you approve the access to the router (mbNET) by a client computer.

Outgoing	Incoming	Call Back	
Settings			Ø
Dialin enable	N	0	

Click the Edit icon to edit the corresponding function.

Incoming Settings			
Dialin enable			
PPP Server IP-Adress (here)			
PPP Server IP-Adress (here)			
Authentication via PAP		×	
Authentication via CHAP		✓	
close connection after inactivity of [s]	300		
Dialin Authentication	Only following user		Ŧ
Username			
Password			

Close

Save

Designation	Description
Dial-up is enabled	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If the checkbox is enabled, access to the router (mbNET) is approved by a client computer.
PPP server IP address (here)	Enter the address of the router (mbNET) here. You can use the same network domain as the local network. However, you should avoid using an existing address, as this can lead to an address conflict.
PPP Client IP address	Here, Enter the IP address that the router assigns the client (calling remote ter- minal) when a PPP connection is established. The router and the other remote terminal form their own network after the con- nection.



Designation	Description
Authentication via PAP	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. Accept the factory default setting. PAP is an authentication type. Use the same setting as the dialling partner. If PAP is disabled, this authentication will not be accepted, and your data can be read by others.
Authentication using CHAP	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. Accept the factory default setting. CHAP is an authentication type. Use the same setting as the dialling partner. Disabling CHAP has the consequence that this authentication will not be ac- cepted and your data can be read by others.
Disconnect connection after [s] inactivity	Enter the time after which an existing connection is terminated if no data packets are transmitted during this time. If nothing is entered, or if the entry is "0", the connection remains active.
Dial-in authentication	<ul> <li>Drop-down menu:</li> <li>Only the following user Only the user registered in the following input fields is entitled to dial in to the router (mbNET).</li> <li>Any user with dial-in rights Every user who has been activated in the User Management &gt; User (sys- tem) for a "modem dial-up", is entitled to establish a connection.</li> </ul>
User name	Enter the username for the PPP dial-in.
Password	Enter the associated password for the PPP dial-in.

## 21.4.1.4 Call Back

When this capability is activated, the mbNET is ready to connect to the Internet when a call is made.

	ľ
No	
-	No

Incoming Settings			
Call Back enable			
How To Callback	Activate Call Back via Phone		Ŧ
		Save	Close

Designation	Description
Callback activated	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. When this checkbox is activated, the mbNET is ready to connect to the Internet when a call is made.
We should be called back	<ul> <li>Drop-down menu:</li> <li>Activate callback via telephone if you choose this setting, the mbNET connects to the Internet if it is called from a phone. So that the connection can be established, the mbNET must be alerted by ringing with four times. Subsequently, the mbNET hangs up and starts the process to dial in to the Internet. This may take up to 30-40 seconds.</li> </ul>
	if you select this setting, the mbNET connects to the Internet once you have set up a dial-up connection to the mbNET and in the user interface, in the Menu System > Info press the Call Back button. You then have 30 seconds to disconnect your dial-up connection, because afterwards the mbNET establishes the connection to the Internet.

# 21.4.2 GSM modem configuration

Netwo	ork > Mo	odem							?
LAN	WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Mode	em Setti	ings							Ø
Moder	mtyp		GSM						
Moder	m Init		+GCI=FD						
Moder	m Init		Х3						
Outg	going SIM	1 C	)utgoing SIM 2	Ge	neral SIM Settin	gs S	SMS		
SIM S	Settings								Ø
SIM Pi	in		1234						
Provid	der		T-mobile	2					
Cred	lentials								ß
Input	select		Phone N	lumber	Us	er		Password	
No			*99***1#	:	us	er		*****	
Auth	enticati	on							
Authe	nticatio	n via PAP	Yes						

Authentication via PAP	Yes
Timeout Dialout [s]	300

## 21.4.2.1 Modem Settings

Here, you can perform the basic modem settings.

Netwo	ork > Mo	odem							?
LAN	WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Mode	em Setti	ings							
Moder	mtyp		GSM						
Moder	m Init		+GCI=FD						
Moder	m Init		Хз						

Click the Edit icon C to edit the corresponding function.

Modem Settings				
Modem Init	+GCI=FD			
Modem Init	Х3			
			Save	Close

# NOTICE

For a GSM connection, none of the two initializations is necessary to guarantee error-free connection.

## 21.4.2.2 Outgoing SIM 1/SIM 2 (configuration for outgoing connections)

Here you can configure the SIM settings, the access data and the authentication for outgoing connections.

Outgoing SIM 1	Outgoing SIM 2	General SIM Settings	SMS		
SIM Settings					2
SIM Pin	1234				
Provider	T-mobile				
Credentials					Ø
Input select	Phone Numb	oer User		Password	
No	*99***1#	user		******	
Authentication					Ø
Authentication via P	AP Yes				
Authentication via P	AP Yes				
Timeout Dialout [s]	300				

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

#### **SIM Settings**

Here you enter the SIM PIN of the respective SIM card and select your wireless service provider.



SIM Settings

SIM Pin	1234
Provider	Other Provider 🔹
APN (Access Point Name)	

Save	Close

Designation	Description
SIM PIN	Enter your personal identification number (PIN) of the respective SIM card to provide access. You need a mobile phone to switch the PIN on or off.
Provider	Selection field with a list of the most common wireless service providers. If your wireless service provider does not appear in the selection, choose "Other provider". In the following field, you can enter the APN.
APN (Access Point Name)	Input field for a private APN.

# Access data (selection of inputs)

# Credentials

Phone Number	User	Password	
*99***1#	user	egal	
	*99***1#	*99***1#     user	* 99***1#     user     egal       Image: Contract of the second

Designation	Description
Selection of in- puts	Selection field no/yes Select Yes if you want to call several stations. Three more lines for entering the necessary access data will appear. Each of these ad- ditional lines is selected based on signals to digital inputs I2 to I4. Now enter the numbers and the user data for the PPP dial-up in the additional fields. Switch the first and one or two of the other three inputs to begin dialling. Please note that you must first switch one or two of the other 3 inputs before switching the first input.

Save

Close

Save

Close

Designation

Description

NOTICE

The mbNET acts only as a PPP client. The PPP server must use a different industrial router (mbNET) or a computer that can process the request.

	Under Network > Internet , set the Internet settings to " <b>On Demand</b> " and then switch the option " <b>Connect if the input is active</b> " to input 1.
	<ul> <li>To call the first number =&gt; switch input I1</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To call the second number =&gt; switch input I2 and then input I1</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To call the third number =&gt; switch input I3 and then input I1</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To call the fourth number =&gt; switch input I2+I3 and then input I1</li> </ul>
Phone number	Here, enter the call/dial-in number of the corresponding provider.
User	Enter the user name required to dial the corresponding provider. Further information can be obtained directly from your provider.
Password	Enter the password required to dial in to the corresponding provider. Further information can be obtained directly from your provider.

#### Authentication

Here you can select the authentication protocol for the dial-up connection and set the time limit for dial attempts.

Authentication	
Authentication via PAP	✓
Authentication via PAP	
Timeout Dialout [s]	300

Designation Description Authentication via Authentication protocol with which your login data is transferred (Password Authenti-PAP cation Protocol). However, we recommend using the secure variant CHAP, as in PAP your password is sent unencrypted. Authentication us-Authentication protocol with your login data transmitted in order to protect this daing CHAP ta (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol). CHAP is normally the procedure which is performed when logging on to the internet at the Internet Service Provider (ISP) via a modem. Timeout when di-After this set time, the dialling attempt is aborted and a new selection is started. alling in [s]

Sava	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are
Save	not yet enabled.
	-



Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.
	NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# 21.4.2.3 General SIM Settings

Here you can specify which SIM card or which of the two SIM card slots is to be used primarily.

Outgoing SIM 1 Ou	tgoing SIM 2 General SIM Settings SMS
Settings SIM	ſ
Select primary SIM card	SIM card slot 1
Switch to secondary SIM card when roaming is detected	No
Switch to secondary SIM card when there is a failure with the primary SIM card	Yes

Click the Edit icon to edit the corresponding function.

SIM card slot 1		•
	Save	Close
Description		
Selection field for the SIM card slot, that should be addr	essed/ used	first.
	Description Selection field for the SIM card slot, that should be addr	SIM card slot 1    Save

Designation	Description
Switch to the secondary SIM card, if network roaming has been detected	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
Switch to the secondary SIM card, if the primary SIM card cannot be ini- tialized	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router.

Only after you confirm via "Apply Changes", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.



#### 21.4.2.4 SMS (Remotely control services via SMS Send SMS if,...)

Outgoing SIM 1	Dutgoing SIM 2	General SIM Settings	SMS	
Remote Service Cont	rol via SMS			Ø
Enable Service Control SMS	l <b>via</b> <sub>No</sub>			
Send a SMS when				Z
Internet connection established	No			

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

## Remotely control services via SMS

Remote Service Control via S	MS
Enable Service Control via	
SMS	
Check the Phone Number of the Sender	
Senders Phone Number	0
	-

Designation	Description
Allow remote control	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
The telephone number of the sender is checked	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. Enable this feature to ensure that the mbNET only executes commands that come from a specific number. You will need this telephone number in the "Sender's phone number" field.
Sender's phone number	Here, enter the phone number from which the mbNET accepts and executes control commands via SMS. All other telephone numbers will be ignored by the device.

## NOTICE

The phone number must not start with 0 (zero).

The entry must be preceded by a country code (example: +49 30 1234567).

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

Save

Close

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

#### Command set for remote control of the mbNET via SMS

Command	Note
INET START or INET STOP	Control of the internet connection of the Industrial router. Note that only one set of active internet connections can be controlled by the established industrial router.
IPSEC START [connection name] or IPSEC STOP [connection name] PPTP START [connection name] or PPTP STOP [connection name] OPENVPN START [connection name] or OPENVPN STOP [connection name]	No matter which VPN type has been selected, the connection name must always be specified accordingly(example: <b>OPENVPN START</b> <b>Wizard</b> ). Furthermore, you need to note that the connection name is case sen- sitive!
REBOOT	The industrial router will restart with this command. Please note that your industrial router will not execute any other commands during this time.
OUT ON or OUT OFF	With the command <b>OUT ON [output no.]</b> or <b>OUT OFF [output no.]</b> you can also switch the outputs of your router on or off via SMS (example: <b>OUT ON 1</b> , switches on Output 1 - <b>OUT OFF 1</b> , switches off Output 1).
IN STATUS	<i>IN STATUS</i> , this command responds by supplying the status of the inputs.
GSM CMD	With the command <b>GSM CMD [at-command]</b> it is possible to send to the router modem any AT commands. The response of the mo- dem is sent via SMS to the sender address (example: " <b>GSM CMD</b> <b>AT+cops?</b> " responds by providing information about the network and the provider).

Please note that only the first 160 characters of the modem response will be transferred.



# Send an SMS if... (the Internet connection was established)

Remote Service Control via	SMS		
Internetconnection established			
Receivers Phone Number			
			Save Close

	NOTICE
Recipient's phone num- ber	Recipient's phone number to whom the notification should be sent.
the Internet connection was established	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. When the function is enabled, the mbNET sends an SMS notification once the mbNET has established a connection to the Internet.
Designation	Description

The phone number must not start with 0 (zero).

The entry must be preceded by a country code (example: +49 30 1234567).

Network > Intern	et					?
LAN WAN M	odem Interr	et DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS	
Internet connection	on Intern	t settings				
Failover						Ø
Failover	No					
Internet connect	ion					C
Internet connectio	on Exte	mal Router/F	Firewall			
Connection mon	itoring					ß

# 21.5 Network > Internet (Internet connection and Internet settings)

# 21.5.1 Configure Internet connectivity

Internet connection	Internet settings	
Failover		Ø
Failover	No	
Internet connection		Ø
Internet connection	External Router/Firewall	

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

No

## Reliability

Ping IP

Failover				
Failover	No			v
			Save	Close



Designation	Description
Reliability	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function. The reliability function allows switching between different Internet connections. If this function is enabled, the Internet interfaces in the desired priority can be entered ac- cording to the device type.

# Internet connection - failsafe reliability = No -

Failover		
Failover	No	
Internet connection		
Internet connection	External Router/Firewall	

# Click the Edit icon to edit the corresponding function.

Internet connection				
Internet connection	External Router/Firewall	v		
	External Router/Firewall			
	DSL			
	Modem		Save	Close

Image 9: The choice of available Internet interfaces depends on the device type and can vary.

WiFi

Designation	Description
Internet access	Here you select the Internet interface, with which the mbNET should connect to the Internet. Depending on the device type, the following Internet interfaces can be selected:
	External Router/Firewall
	• DSL
	• Modem
	• Wi-Fi

## Internet connection - failsafe reliability = = Yes -(failsafe reliability of the Internet interfaces)

Failover			C
Failover	Yes		
Failover of Internet inter	faces		Ø
Retry interface before switch to next interface	1		
Internet Interface priority list	Priority	Active	Internet interface

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

Failover			
Retry interface before switch to next interface	1		
Add Internet Interface to priority list	Reset Modem		v
Internet Interface priority list	Internet via Modem		×
		Save	Close

Image 10: The choice of available Internet interfaces depends on the device type and can vary.

Designation	Description			
The number of attempts before switching to the next interface	Enter here the number of connection attempts after which the next Internet in- erface/action is then selected.			
Add Internet interface to priority list	<ul> <li>Here you can select an Internet interface/action from the selection field.</li> <li>Click the green plus sign to add the selected interface/action to the priority list.</li> <li>Repeat this process as necessary until no interface/action is available.</li> </ul>			
Internet Interface Priority	The selected interfaces/actions are listed in order of priority here.			
List	By clicking on the red cross <b>X</b> at the end of the line, the relevant interface/ac- tion can be deleted.			



## Internet interface priority list - Example

Failover			Ø
Failover	Yes		
Failover of Internet interf	aces		
Retry interface before switch to next interface	1		
Internet Interface priority list	Priority	Active	Internet interface
	1	✓	Internet via WAN
	2	✓	Internet via Modem
	3	✓	System restart

Image 11: Example of an "Internet interface priority list".

#### Check the Internet connection (ping IP)

Here you can also check the availability of the internet connection by pinging an IP address. You can enter up to three different IP addresses with different intervals. The entries are executed one after the other.

Connection monitoring				
Ping IP	Yes			٣
PING IP or host address 1				
PING interval 1 [s]	5			
PING IP or host address 2				
PING interval 2 [s]	5			
PING IP or host address 3				
PING interval 3 [s]	5			
			Save	Close
Designation		Description		
Ping IP	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function.			
Ping IP/Host Address 1	1 Input field for the IP/Host Address. Example: <b>8.8.4.4</b> (google-public-dns-b.google.com)			

Designation	Description
PING Time Interval 1 [s]	Input field for the PING time interval. Example: If you enter "5", the IP/Host Address is pinged every 5 seconds.

You can see the ping result on the quick start page under step 2.

Quickstart Diagnose	
1. MDH831 ✔	<ul> <li>Device type: MDH831 (6.0.2) - Serialnumber: 13188310034248 - Signal Quality: (0)</li> <li>Internet : Connection established</li></ul>
2. ↓ ↓ ↓	Interface : External Router/Firewall <li>Ping : 8.8.4.4 - (9.331ms)</li>

# 21.5.2 Internet settings (connection settings)

Here, you can specify:

- When the mbNET should connect to the Internet,
- · Whether, how and when to disconnect the Internet connection,

Netwo	rk > Int	ernet							?
LAN	WAN	WLAN	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
Interr	net conn	ection	Internet	settings					
Conn	ections	settings							Ø
Conne	ction M	ode	keep co	onnectior	1				
lock co	nnectio	n	dont lo	ck					
broado email	ast IP-/	dress via	No						

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

# Connection settings,

• Internet Settings,

Internet settings		
Connection Mode	keep connection	•
lock connection	Don't lock	•
broadcast IP-Adress via email		
E-Mail address		

Designation,	Description,
Connection,	Selection field for the type of connection when the mbNET should connect the In- ternet.
	<ul> <li>Maintain connection always</li> <li>Select this setting if the mbNET should connect to the Internet immediately after switching on/device reboot.</li> <li>WARNING: The Internet connection remains permanently on!</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If necessary,</li> <li>Select this setting if the router will establish a connection to the Internet if one of the following options is selected and executed (a multiple selection is possible):</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Connection for data transfer</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Connection via the "Dial Out" button</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Connect if input active</li> </ul>
Lock connection	You can use this selection field to specify whether and on which digital input of the mbNET you want to lock/disconnect the internet connection.
	<ul> <li>Do not lock in this setting, there is no separation by one of the four inputs.</li> </ul>
	• Input 1; Input 2; Input 3; Input 4 When selecting one of the four digital inputs, the Internet connection is inter- rupted if the selected input receives a high signal. If the input
Send IP address via email	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. When this function is enabled, the current public IP address will be emailed as soon as an Internet connection is established.
E-mail address	Enter the email address to which the IP address should be sent, if you enabled the function " <b>Transfer IP address via email</b> ".

Save

Close

## Settings on Demand

This menu appears when you click on the Internet settings for **Connection type** On Demand.

On demand settings			
Connect on traffic			
Ignore traffic on LAN			
Ignore traffic from internal services			
Connect on "Dial-Out"			
Connect on Sign 1 at Input	Input 1		•
close connection after inactivity of [s]			

Designation	Description		
Connection for data transfer	If a subscriber should be accessed via the LAN interface of the mbNET which is not located in the LAN network, a connection to the Internet will be established when the function is enabled.		
Ignore traffic from the LAN	If this checkbox is enabled, no connection different to the setting under "Con- nection type" can be established (for example by a subscriber connected on the LAN who is using the mbNET as a gateway).		
Ignore traffic from inter- nal services	If this checkbox is enabled, no connection can be established that is different to the setting under "Connection type" (for example, if an email should be sent through the mbNET or automatic time synchronization should be executed.		
Connection via the "Di- al Out" button	Enable this function if the connection to the Internet should be established by pressing the " <b>Dial Out</b> " button.		
NOTICE			

Keep the **Dial Out**button pressed until the LED Con starts flashing.

Connect if input active	You can use this selection field to specify whether and via which digital input of the mbNET the internet connection should be established.			
	• <b>Do not connect</b> with this setting, there is no connection to the Internet by one of the four digital inputs.			
	<ul> <li>Input 1; Input 2; Input 3; Input 4</li> <li>When one of the four digital inputs is selected, the Internet connection is established once the selected input receives a high signal.</li> </ul>			
Disconnect connection after [s] inactivity	Enter the time period in seconds after which the internet connection will be auto- matically disconnected if there is no activity (no more data packets are sent).			

#### NOTICE

If you leave this field blank, this function is inactive and the internet connection remains active.



Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router.

Only after you confirm via "Apply Changes", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

## 21.6 Network > DHCP

The mbNET can be configured as a DHCP server on the LAN or WAN network.

If this service is active, the router will assign IP addresses to clients from the network independently.

In addition, you can configure the service for the LAN and/or WAN interface. For example, you can supply several devices with it. However, please note that these devices are then connected to the WAN interface and configured under network WAN to DHCP.

#### NOTICE

Keep in mind that these devices then must be connected to the WAN interface and configured under network WAN to DHCP.

Network > D	НСР							?
LAN WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS		
LAN V	VAN							
LAN DHCP-	Server Setti	ngs					٩	8
DHCP Server	active	No						
Begin								
End								
Subnetmask								
Broadcast ad	ldress							
Gateway								
DNS Server								
NetBIOS/WIN	IS-Server							
Lease Timeo	ut							
LAN DHCP-	Server stati	c lease setti	ings				6	
MAC Address			IP Addr	ess				

Click the Edit icon *of to* edit the corresponding function.



## 21.6.1 LAN/WAN DHCP server settings

# LAN DHCP-Server Settings

DHCP Server active	
Begin	
End	
Subnetmask	
Broadcast address	
Gateway	
DNS Server	
NetBIOS/WINS-Server	
Lease Timeout	

Save

Close

Designation	Description
DHCP Server active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. By enabling the function the mbNET can be set up as a DHCP server to the cor- responding interface.
Start	Enter the start address of the address range managed by the DHCP server.
End	End address of the range managed by the DHCP server.
Subnet mask	Subnet mask of the range managed by the DHCP server.
Broadcast address	The broadcast address of the range managed by the DHCP server.
Gateway	You can optionally enter here the LAN IP address of a router that connects the clients present on the network to the Internet or another network.
DNS Server	You can optionally enter here the LAN IP address of a DNS server on the net- work. The mbNET can also accept both services, DHCP and DNS.
NetBIOS/WINS Server	You can optionally enter here the address of an existing NetBIOS/WINS server on the network.
Period of validity [s]	Enter the time period [in seconds] for how long a client is assigned a specific IP address by a DHCP server.

#### 21.6.2 LAN/WAN DHCP static lease server settings

Here you can create fixed mappings between IP addresses and MAC addresses. i.e. a device with a specific MAC address always receives the same IP address.

LAN DHCP-Serv	ver static lease settings	<b>C</b> +
MAC Address	IP Address	
Click on the green	plus <b>b</b> , in order to create and add an assignment.	
LAN DHCP-Server	Settings	
MAC Address	IP Address	
		Save Close
Designation	Description	
MAC address	Enter the MAC address here	

MAC address	Enter the MAC address here. The MAC address must be entered in the format 00:00:00:00:00:00 (colon as separa- tor).
IP address	Enter the IP address that should be assigned to the device.

#### Confirm your entries by clicking on the Save button and repeat the process for another assignment.

LAN DHCP-Server static lease settings				
MAC Address	IP Address			
00:50:C2:71:76:18	192.168.0.200	×		
70:83:05:80:90:C6	172.16.20.200	×		
70:B3:D5:2C:F2:7F	192.168.0.254	x ×		

Image 12: Example of an assignment list.

Click the Edit icon , to edit the corresponding entry.

Click the Delete icon *K*, to delete the corresponding entry.

## 21.7 Network > DNS-Server

Using DNS, IP addresses are converted into names.

At the factory, the mbNET is configured in such a way that the DNS server is assigned by the Internet service provider (IPS).

For permanent connection of the industrial router, a dedicated DNS server can be added here. This is then used before the server assigned by the internet service provider.

#### Server

Netwo	ork > DN	NS Server					?
LAN	WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS
By o nan	default t neservei	he DNS-Ser rs. They will	vers will be be used bef	given by t ore the gi	he ISP. If you ar ven servers fro	e using a m the ISP	static connection here you can add the
Serv	/er	Settings					
DNS	Server						C +
IP Add	dress						
172.25	5.255.250	)			ß	×	
lick on	the gre	en plus	], in orde	r to creat	e and add an	assignm	nent.

Click the Edit icon , to edit the corresponding entry.

Click the Delete icon . to delete the corresponding entry.



# Add server

LAN DHCP-Server Settings	
DNS Server IP-Address	
new	
	Save Close
Designation	Description
DNS Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of your DNS server.
Confirm your entries by c	licking on the Save button and repeat the process for further DNS server entries.
	ΝΟΤΙΟΓ

NOTICE

A total of up to five DNS servers can be entered.

## Settings

Here, you specify the basic settings for the DNS server.

Server	Settings	
DNS Server se	ettings	ľ
No Hosts	No	
Strict Order	No	
Filter WIN2K	No	
Domain		
Cache Size	0	

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.



LAN DHCP-Server Settings

No Hosts			
Strict Order			
Filter WIN2K			
Domain			
Cache Size	0		

Save Close

Designation	Description
No Hosts	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this checkbox is activated, the computer names entered under network hosts are not taken into account.
Strict arrangement	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this checkbox is activated, the sequence of the entries is exactly as described un- der "Server".
Filter WIN2K	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this checkbox is activated, constant and unnecessary requests from older Windows Clients are filtered. If connection type "On demand" is selected, ( <i>Network &gt; Internet &gt; Internet Settings &gt;</i> <i>Connection Type</i> ), this setting is useful as an internet connection is not established for every request.
Domain	Optional input field for entering a private domain for the network participants.
Memory Size	Enter number of stored names (hosts) here. How to specify how many names can be cached with IP address.

## 21.8 Network Hosts

This setting allows you to always assign a specific name to exactly one IP address. DNS queries can therefore be answered directly.

AN WAN	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS	
Here you d	an insert re	lations betwe	een IPs an	id names to ans	wer requ	ests direct.	
Host Settin	gs						l

Click on the green plus to add an assignment.

# **Host Settings**

This setting allows you to always assign a specific name to exactly one IP address. DNS queries can therefore be answered directly.

Host Settings	
IP Address	Name
	Save Close
Designation	Description
IP address	Enter the IP address of the network node (PC, router, etc.), which should be cancelled (e.g.: 172.16.20.1).
Name	Enter the corresponding name of the network user (e.g.: PC-DOKU.venus.local).
	NOTICE

In order that a name server request can be answered in Windows, the name must be followed by a dot "." Example: PC-DOKU.venus.local.) is entered. Otherwise, the existing default domain is used.

After clicking on the "Save" button, the new assignment appears in the overview.



Network > Hosts						(
LAN WAN Mo	dem Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	Hosts	DynDNS	
Here you can ins	ert relations betwe	een IPs an	d names to ans	wer requ	ests direct.	
Host Settings						E
IP Address		Name				
172.16.20.1		PC-DOK	J.venus.local		ľ	×
127.0.0.1		user-PC.	venus.local		Ø	×
ge 13: Example entries ck the Edit icon	in the Host Settings $\vec{S}$ , to edit the co	orrespond	ding entry.			
	to delete	the corre				
ck the Delete icor	, to doloto		sponding ent	у.		
ck the Delete icon	Clicking on '	"Save" te bled.	sponding ent	ry. s the curr	ent entries/	changes. But the changes are

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# 21.9 Network > DynDNS

#### General

Because the mbNET is assigned a unique IP when dialling to the Internet, it can be found from a client PC using this IP.

Once the mbNET interrupts the connection to the Internet and dials in again, it also receives a new IP address. The DynDNS service means that the mbNET is always available under the same name. It is used for converting addresses into names and vice versa.

#### 21.9.1 System DynDNS settings (MB Connect Line DynDNS service)

By enabling this function, you use the automatic DynDNS service of MB connect line. Logging in or registration are not required.

In this case, the name structure is fixed and can only be modified/adapted by the host name (device name).

The name structure is as follows: mbNET serial number. *Device name*.mymbnet.biz The serial number is fixed and the device name can be freely selected.

Example: Serial number: "05188550432873"

- + Device name: "Own-Device name"
- = Name on the Internet: "05188550432873.own device name.mymbnet.biz"

NOTICE

Approx. 1-2 minutes after the mbNET dials into the Internet, the name is available worldwide.

own-Devid	e-nam	ie			admi
Network > DynDN	IS				(
LAN WAN Mo	odem Inte	ernet DH	HCP DNS Serve	er Hosts	DynDNS
System DynDNS	Settings				2
The DNS name is	made up of	the serial	number.hostnam	e.SMTP-Serv	ver. Change the hostname to get your own
name. The serial	number cou	iu not be c	nanged.		
name. The serial	nit via:	lu not be c	0518855043	32873.own-	Device-name.mymbnet.biz

Click the Edit icon is to edit the corresponding function and enable the MB connect line DynDNS service.



#### 21.9.2 Public DynDNS service

In order to be able to use a public DynDNS service, you must register/have registered for one of the services that are supported by the mbNET. Registration is normally free.

ce	C
No	
****	
	ce No ******

Click the Edit icon is to edit the corresponding function.

#### public DynDNS Service

Active		
Provider	ez-ip	¥
User		
Password		
Host Name		
Interval [s]		

Designation Description Active Enable this checkbox if you are registered with a DynDNS service, from the selection list from the drop down list in the provider field and the mbNET should use this service. The mbNET reports the next time it dials into the Internet the current IP address that it has received from the Internet service provider to the DynDNS service. Provider Here you can select the DynDNS service for which you are registered. User Enter the user name that you entered during registration with your DynDNS service. Password Enter the password that you assigned during registration. Host name Enter the name that you entered for the mbNET DynDNS service. Updating the Enter here the interval [seconds] after which the host name should be updated. name after ... [s]

Save

Close

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# 22 Serial (serial ports COM1/COM2)

#### General

If the IP address of the mbNET is known, the two serial interfaces of the device can be accessed over a dial-up connection or via the Internet.

The **COM1** serial port can be configured directly via the web interface to RS232, RS485 and RS422 and the corresponding control commands redirected, e.g. to a connected controller or a connected device.

Depending on the device type, the interface is executed as either **COM2** or **COM1** or as a **MPI/PROFIBUS** interface.

Via the MPI/PROFIBUS interface, it is possible to remotely access controllers (e.g. S7-300/400). The MPI/ PROFIBUS interface supports baud rates of up to 12Mbps.

	RouterAlpha		admin
	Serial > COM1		?
	COM1 COM2		
System	COM1 Settings		8
Network	Interface Type	RS232	
Serial	Driver typ	System Driver	
Security Settings	Driver	Allen Bradley 19200	
VPN	COM1 Network Settings	3	ß
IO-Manager	Protocol	тср	
Alert manager	Port	7001	
Extras	Enable Ports through firewall	No	
State	Disable Service	Yes	

Image 14: The "Serial" menu depends on the device type and can vary.

Click the Edit icon *of to* edit the corresponding function.

## 22.1 COM1/COM2 in the RS232/485 version

# NOTICE

If your mbNET type has two serial interfaces in the RS232/485 version, the settings for COM2 as the same as for COM1.

#### 22.1.1 COM1 (COM2) settings

#### Driver type: System driver

COM1 Settings		
Interface Type	RS232	¥
Driver typ	System Driver	T
Driver	Allen Bradley 19200	Ţ

Designation	Description
Interface type	Use this selection field to set the interface type. The options are: RS232, RS485 2-wire, RS485 4-wire, RS422
Driver type	When choosing a <b>System Driver</b> , a range of product- and company-specific device drivers are available to control your serial devices.
Driver	selection field with product and company-specific device drivers, for controlling serial gates.

## Driver type: User settings

COM1 Settings		
Interface Type	RS232	۳
Driver typ	User settings	۳
Baudrate	300	•
Dataformat	8 Databits, None Parity, 1 Stopbit	۳
Handshake	no Handshake	•
Receive loops		

Save

Save

Close

Close


Designation	Description					
Interface type	Use this selection field to set the interface type. The options are: RS232, RS485 2-wire, RS485 4-wire, RS422					
Driver type	Select the driver type <b>User Preferences</b> , if no matching driver is available in the drop-down list or if you want to make your own settings.					
Bit rate	Enter the baud rate of the communication here.					
Data format	Select one of the settings for data bits, parity and stop bits.					
Flow control	Select the type of flow control.					
Number of receive queries for gener- ating a telegram	This is a reception counter for the serial signals. Enter here the number of cycles that the system runs through until the data packet is sent.					

# 22.1.2 COM1 (COM2) network settings

COM2 Settings		
Protocol	TCP	¥
Port	7002	
Enable Ports through firewall		
Disable Service		

Save Close

Designation	Description					
Protocol	lect the appropriate driver for your connected devices.					
Port	Enter the port for the network or Internet communications. The port can be chosen freely, but it must match the settings in the VCOMLAN2.					
Enable ports in the firewall	The checkbox must be enabled so that you can communicate via the specified port. Otherwise, all signals/packages are blocked/discarded. This rule is only applicable when you access the serial interfaces using the public ad- dress. If there is an existing VPN connection you communicate via the local network ad- dress.					
Lock service	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this function is enabled, the serial driver to communicate between mb- DIALUP/VCOM-LAN and serial port is not started.					
Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .					
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.					

### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

#### 22.2 COM2 in the MPI/PROFIBUS version

Communication with the S7 via

- VCOM LAN2 (PC adapter in the SIMATIC Manager)
- RFC1006
- mbNETS7 driver (installable directly in the SIMATIC Manager)

#### 22.2.1 COM2 Settings

#### Protocol: MPI/PROFIBUS Network Driver

NOTICE

The Protocol Choice **MPI/PROFIBUS network driver** requires the installation of a network driver on the client PC beforehand! Only in conjunction with the option RFC1006 can a separate driver installation be dispensed with and the "TCP/IP (Auto)" option under the PG/PC interface used. RFC1006 uses TCP port 102.

#### COM2 Settings

Protocol	MPI/PROFIBUS Network Driver		
Enable RFC1006	✓		
Own station address			
Enable RFC1006 Routing			
Station address of the routing gateway			

Designation	Description
Protocol	Protocol selection field. You can choose between a connection via <b>MPI/Profibus network driver</b> or <b>VCOM LAN2/PC adapter</b> .
Enable RFC1006 pro- tocol	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
own station address	If RFC1006 is enabled, enter a unique MPI/DP station address for the router (mb-NET).

#### NOTICE

With this station address, the connected routers in the MPI/DP network logs on. This is necessary if the communication is exclusively via RFC1006. In a mixed operation of connections with network drivers and RFC1006, the router always logs in using the address specified in the first connection used.



Designation	Description
Enable routing via RFC1006	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. The activated function enables routing via RFC1006.
Station address of the Routing Gateway	If routing function is enabled via RFC1006, you must enter the address of the routing gateway here. (Address 14 in the example below).

### NOTICE

If a bus participants (slave) is to be accessed on a subordinate station that is not directly connected to the network, the station address of the PLC must be registered as a routing gateway in the router with the gateway (master).

#### Example:

If the PLC (master) is connected to the router (address 13) via MPI-bus (address 14), a participant (address 5) is connected to the Profibus of the master (address 4). The routing must be enabled in order to now access the Profibus using the router (address 13) via MPI on the participants with address 5 on the Profibus.

#### Protocol: VCOM LAN/PC Adapter

In the case of protocol choice **VCOM LAN2/PC Adapter**, the PG/PC interface must be set to a PC adapter (MPI/PROFIBUS). If the bus speed is higher than 1.5 MBit/s, this must be specified manually.

Protocol	VCOM-LAN2/PC-Adapater	•
Protocol	Settings from PG/PC-Interface	¥

Designation	Description
Protocol	Protocol selection field. You can choose between a connection via <b>MPI/Profibus net- work driver</b> or <b>VCOM LAN2/PC adapter</b> .
Protocol	MPI/PROFIBUS baud rate selection field.

Save

Close

Save

Close

#### 22.2.2 COM2 Network settings

COM2 Settings		
Protocol	TCP	¥
Port	7002	
Enable Ports through firewall		
Disable Service		

Designation Description Protocol Select the appropriate driver for your connected devices. Port Enter the port via which the communication should take place here. Enable ports in If this checkbox is enabled, the port indicated above is enabled for direct access from the firewall the Internet in the firewall. Lock service Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this function is enabled, the serial driver to communicate between mb-DIALUP/VCOM-LAN and serial port is not started. Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are Save not yet enabled. Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes. Close

#### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# 23 Security settings

The mbNET has a built-in firewall to protect against strange or/and unauthorized access/connection attempts. Incoming and outgoing data traffic is monitored, logged and enabled/disabled via this firewall.

	RouterAlpha	admin 🚦
	Security Settings > Firewall general	?
Sustam	Firewall general WAN - LAN LAN - WAN Forwarding NAT	
Network	Firewall Settings	ľ
Serial	maximum Security	
Security Settings	All incoming Packages (Data from Internet) are <b>rejected</b> All outgoing Packages (Data from LAN) are <b>rejected</b>	
VPN	except: DNS, FTP, IMAP, HTTP, HTTPS, POP3, SMTP, Telnet, NTP	
IO-Manager		
Alert manager	Replace the senders IP-address of all outgoing (LAN) packages with the LAN-IP address of this Yes	
Extras	router (SNAT)	
State	(WAN) packages with the WAN-IP address of this No router (SNAT)	

The following submenus are listed under the Security settings menu:

Submenu	Description				
Firewall General	Here you can specify the basic firewall settings.				
WAN - LAN	This setting is used to regulate the <b>incoming</b> traffic.				
LAN - WAN	This setting is used to regulate the <b>outgoing</b> traffic.				
Forwarding	Here you can forward requests from specific IP addresses and ports to redefined IP addresses and ports.				
NAT	<ul> <li>"SimpleNAT" allows you to grant access to an IP address from the LAN Power Plant 1:1 in the WAN Ethernet network.</li> <li>Using the "1:1 NAT" Is it possible to connect two networks that are in the same address range with each other.</li> </ul>				

Click the Edit icon C, to edit a function or an element.

Click the Add icon to add an item.

\_

Click the Delete icon to delete/remove an item.

# 23.1 Security Settings > Firewall General

Firewall general	WAN - LAN	LAN - WAN	Forwarding	NAT	
Firewall Setting	s				Ø
	mai All i All c exce	<b>kimum Securi</b> ncoming Pack outgoing Packa ept: DNS, FTP,	<b>ty</b> ages (Data from ages (Data from IMAP, HTTP, HT	n Internet) are <b>rejected</b> n LAN) are <b>rejected</b> TPS, POP3, SMTP, Telnet, NTP	

The firewall can generally be configured in one of the following four variants:

#### Maximum security level

all incoming packets (data from the Internet) will be **rejected** all outgoing packets from the LAN (data) will be **rejected** except: DNS, FTP, IMAP, POP3, SMTP, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, NTP

Enable signals for the data traffic must be configured accordingly. Both incoming and outgoing traffic will be blocked. To access the web interface (from outside!), the TCP protocol and destination port 443 entered and activated in the **WAN - LAN** rules. However, if you start a VPN connection, access will be enabled accordingly for the data packets from the VPN tunnel.

#### Normal security level

All incoming packets (data from the Internet) will be **rejected** All outgoing packets from the (LAN data) will be **accepted** 

In this variant, the incoming traffic (data from the Internet) is blocked while the outgoing data will be accepted.

#### Minimum level of security

All incoming packets (data from the Internet) will be **accepted.** All outgoing packets (LAN data) will be **accepted**.

In this variant, all incoming and outgoing data is accepted.

#### Firewall off

All incoming packets (data from the Internet and WAN Ethernet\*) will be **accepted.** All outgoing packets (LAN data) will be **accepted.** Routing between all interfaces is **switched on**.

When you select this variant, all incoming and outgoing data is accepted. In addition, all entered firewall rules are deactivated and routing between **WAN-LAN** and **WAN-LAN** is active.

\*In the case of devices without a WAN Ethernet interface, this is only "Data from the Internet".

#### NOTICE

The "**Minimum security level**" and "**Firewall off**" variants should only be selected for a short period of time and for test purposes or at initial start-up, if you want to ensure that a configured rule should not apply.

**ATTENTION!** Any data traffic from inside to outside and external access are possible! The integrity of your mbNET and the connected devices is threatened when you select one of these two variants!

Click the Edit icon , to set a security level.

## **Firewall settings**

Firewall Settings			
Interface Type	maximum Security	 	•
Replace the senders IP-addr (LAN) packages with the LAN router (SNAT)	ess of all outgoing N-IP address of this		
Replace the senders IP-addr (WAN) packages with the WA router (SNAT)	ess of all outgoing AN-IP address of this		
		Save	Close

Designation	Description		
Interface type	Selection field for one of the four security levels		
Replace all sender IP ac dresses of all outgoing LAN packets with the ov LAN IP address of the router (SNAT)	<ul> <li>Enabling this function (SNAT) allows access from the outside (e.g. via VPN) to LAN participants, without them having to set the mbNET as a default gateway. The actual source IP in an incoming IP packet is thereby replaced by the IP of the mbNET LAN interface.</li> <li>This is a significant benefit when integrating the remote maintenance into existing network structures, because they don't need to be changed.</li> </ul>		
Save Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the c not yet enabled.			
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.		

## NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

## 23.2 Security Settings > WAN LAN (configuration of the firewall rules)

This setting controls the **incoming** traffic, i.e. the following settings only apply to incoming traffic from the outside.

From the point of view of the mbNET Firewall is "**WAN**" always the currently active interface to the Internet. Depending on the setting under "**Network > Internet**" the following rule results:

Internet connection:

- Connect to the Internet via WAN (external router) Here the WAN Ethernet port is the interface to the Internet. The firewall controls the traffic from the WAN Ethernet to the LAN Ethernet.
- · Connect to the Internet via modem

Here the modem is the interface to the Internet. The firewall controls the data traffic from the modem to the LAN Ethernet. The entire data traffic on the WAN Ethernet interface will be blocked.

Connect to the Internet via WAN

here is the "DSL data traffic" over the WAN Ethernet is the interface to the Internet. The firewall controls the traffic from the DSL modem to the LAN Ethernet. The other data traffic on the WAN Ethernet interface will be blocked.

Firewall	general	WAN - LAN	LAN - WAN	Forwarding	NAT			
WAN - I	LAN Rule							<b>8</b> +
Active	Action	WAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	LAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port

Click on the green plus

WAN - LAN Rule

Active	
Action	Drop
WAN Interface	Internet 🔹
Source IP	
Source Port	
Protocol	All
LAN Interface	Internal services 🔹
Destination IP	
Destination Port	

Save Close

Designation	Description
Active	Checkbox for enabling/disabling this firewall rule.



Designation	Description
Campaign	Selection field for the applicable action. The options are:
	<ul> <li>DiscardWhen you select this action, no data packets can pass and the pack- ets will be deleted immediately. The sender receives no information about the whereabouts of the data packets.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Reject The data packets are rejected. The sender receives a signal that the da- ta packets have been rejected.</li> </ul>
	Accept Here, the data packets are allowed through.
WAN interfaces	You can use this selection field to determine which WAN interface* should normally be used. The options are:
	Internet
	WAN Ethernet
	OpenVPN
	IPsecVPN
	• PPTPVPN
	• All
	* The selection field for the WAN interface can vary depending on the type of router.
Origin IP	Enter the source IP addresses of incoming data packets for which the firewall rule applies. If you leave this field empty (blank), these rules will be applied to all data traffic and only on the selected interface.
Origin port	Enter the source ports of incoming data packets for which the firewall rule applies. If you leave this field empty (blank), these rules will be applied to all data traffic and only on the selected interface.
Protocol	Selection field for the transfer protocol to use.
	All the set rule applies to ALL protocole
	• All - the set rule applies to ALL protocols
	• ICP - the set rule applies only to the LIDP protocol
	• <b>ICMP</b> - the set rule applies only for the ICMP protocol
I AN interfaces	You can use this selection field to determine which I AN interface* should normally be
	used. The options are:
	Internal services
	LAN Ethernet
	• All
Destination IP	Enter the IP address to which data packets are to be forwarded.
Destination-Port	Enter the ports to which the data packets are to be forwarded.

#### NOTICE

You can enter address **ranges** in the input fields for the **IP** address. Example of address ranges: 192.168.0.100-192.168.0.110 or 192.168.0.20/30

Address listings are **not** possible!

In the input fields for the **ports**, you can enter **ranges or enumerations**. Example of a port range: 502-504 Example of port enumeration: 502,677,555 Both, range and enumeration **can not** be used simultaneously in the same field.

### NOTICE

Ranges must be separated by a hyphen (-) and enumerated by comma (,).

No spaces between the elements to be separated!

#### NOTICE

The input of IP and port is not mandatory. If neither an IP nor a port is specified, a rule applies only to the selected interfaces.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

# NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

WAN -	LAN Rule							ľ	+
Active	Action	WAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	LAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	
Yes	Accept	Internet	172.25.15.101	30	All	All	192.168.0.220	30	×
Yes	Reject	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104		ТСР	Internal services	192.167.15.22		×

Image 15: The firewall rule example entry

## 23.2.1 Edit firewall rule

### Change the entered rule order

Firewal	l general	WAN - LAI	N LAN - WAN	Forward	ding NAT				
WAN -	LAN Rule	8 1							+
Active	Action	WAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	LAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	
Yes	Accept	Internet	172.25.15.101	30	All	All	192.168.0.220	30	×
Yes	Reject	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104		ТСР	Internal services	192.167.15.22		×

Click on the Edit icon *of* in the header of the overview to change the sequence of the entered change rules.

WAN	I - LAN Rule								
	WAN Interface	Source IP Source Port		Protocol		Destination IP Destination Port	LAN Inter	face	
~	Internet	172.25.15.101:30	*	All	*	192.168.0.220:30	All		×
~	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104:	*	ТСР	₩	192.167.15.22:	Internal se	ervices	
~	OpenVPN	10.28.8.12:	₩	All	₩	182.27.14,23:	Internal se	ervices	×
								Save	Close

Here you can move up and down (drag and drop) to change the sequence of the firewall rules.

# Change/delete firewall rule

WAN -	LAN Rule							Ø	+
Active	Action	WAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	LAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	
Yes	Accept	Internet	172.25.15.101	30	All	All	192.168.0.220	30	×
Yes	Reject	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104		ТСР	Internal services	192.167.15.22		×

Click on the Edit icon  $\ensuremath{\textcircled{B}}$  at the end of the line of the registered rule to edit it.

Click the Delete icon . to delete the corresponding entry.

# 23.3 Security Settings > LAN-WAN (configuration of the firewall rules)

This setting controls the **outgoing** traffic, i.e. the following settings only apply to outgoing traffic.

From the point of view of the mbNET Firewall is "WAN" always the currently active interface to the Internet.

Firewall	general	WAN - LAN	LAN - WAN	Forwarding	g NAT			
LAN - W	VAN Rule							<b>8</b> +
Active	Action	LAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	WAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port

Click on the green plus **t**, to add a rule.

LAN - WAN Rule		
Active		
Action	Drop	T
LAN Interface	Internal services	¥
Source IP		
Source Port		
Protocol	All	¥
WAN Interface	Internet	Ŧ
Destination IP		
Destination Port		

Save	Close
Save	Close

Designation	Description
Active	Checkbox for enabling/disabling this firewall rule.
Campaign	Selection field for the applicable action. The options are:
	<ul> <li>Discard When you select this action, no data packets can pass and the pack- ets will be deleted immediately. The sender receives no information about the whereabouts of the data packets.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Reject The data packets are rejected. The sender receives a signal that the da- ta packets have been rejected.</li> </ul>
	Accept Here, the data packets are allowed through.

Designation	Description					
LAN interfaces	You can use this selection field to determine which LAN interface* should normally be used. The options are:					
	Internal services					
	LAN Ethernet					
	• All					
Origin IP	Enter the source IP addresses of incoming data packets for which the firewall rule applies. If you leave this field empty (blank), these rules will be applied to all data traffic and only on the selected interface.					
Origin port	Enter the source ports of incoming data packets for which the firewall rule applies. If you leave this field empty (blank), these rules will be applied to all data traffic and only on the selected interface.					
Protocol	Selection field for the transfer protocol to use. The options are:					
	All - the set rule applies to ALL protocols					
	<ul> <li>TCP - the set rule applies only to the TCP protocol</li> </ul>					
	<ul> <li>UDP - the set rule applies only to the UDP protocol</li> </ul>					
	ICMP - the set rule applies only for the ICMP protocol					
WAN interfaces	You can use this selection field to determine which WAN interface* should normally be used. The options are:					
	Internet					
	WAN Ethernet					
	OpenVPN					
	IPsecVPN					
	• PPTPVPN					
	• All					
	* The selection field for the WAN interface can vary depending on the type of router.					
Destination IP	Enter the IP address to which data packets are to be forwarded.					
Destination-Port	Enter the ports to which the data packets are to be forwarded.					

## NOTICE

You can enter address **ranges** in the input fields for the **IP** address. Example of address ranges: 192.168.0.100-192.168.0.110 or 192.168.0.20/30

Address listings are **not** possible!

In the input fields for the **ports**, you can enter **ranges or enumerations**. Example of a port range: 502-504 Example of port enumeration: 502,677,555 Both, range and enumeration **can not** be used simultaneously in the same field.



### NOTICE

Ranges must be separated by a hyphen (-) and enumerated by comma (,).

No spaces between the elements to be separated!

# NOTICE

The input of IP and port is not mandatory. If neither an IP nor a port is specified, a rule applies only to the selected interfaces.

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.

#### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

Firewal	ll general	WAN - LA	N LAN - WAN	Forward	ding NAT	ī			
LAN -	WAN Rule							ľ	+
Active	Action	LAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	WAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	
Yes	Drop	Internal services	192.168.0.155- 192.168.0.250		All	Internet	192.167.15.22		×
Yes	Drop	Internal services	172.25.15.101	30	TCP	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104		×

Image 16: The firewall rule example entry

#### 23.3.1 Edit firewall rule

### Change the entered rule order

Firewa	ll general	WAN - LA	N LAN - WAN	Forward	ding NAT				
LAN -	WAN Rule								+
Active	Action	LAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	WAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	
Yes	Drop	Internal services	192.168.0.155- 192.168.0.250		All	Internet	192.167.15.22		×
Yes	Drop	Internal services	172.25.15.101	30	ТСР	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104		×

Click on the Edit icon  $\square$  in the header of the overview to change the sequence of the entered change rules.

LAN	- WAN Rule							
	WAN Interface	Source IP Source Port		Protocol		Destination IP Destination Port	LAN Interface	
•	Internet	192.168.0.155- 192.168.0.250:	*	All	*	192.167.15.22:	Internal services	×
•	WAN Ethernet	172.25.15.101:30	*	ТСР	*	192.168.104:	Internal services	
×	OpenVPN	182.27.14.23:	*	All	*	10.28.8.12:	Internal services	×
							Save	Close

Here you can move up and down (drag and drop) to change the sequence of the firewall rules.



# Change/delete firewall rule

LAN -	WAN Rule	2						8	+
Active	Action	LAN Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	WAN Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	
Yes	Drop	Internal services	192.168.0.155- 192.168.0.250		All	Internet	192.167.15.22		×
Yes	Drop	Internal services	172.25.15.101	30	ТСР	WAN Ethernet	192.168.1.104		×

Click on the Edit icon *C* at the end of the line of the registered rule to edit it.

Click the Delete icon K, to delete the corresponding entry.

# 23.4 Security Settings > Forwarding

Forwarding is used to forward requests from specific IP addresses and ports to IP addresses and ports defined in turn.

Firewall general	WAN - LAN	LAN - WAN	Forwarding	NAT			
Forwarding Rul	e						<b>8</b> +
Active Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	Destination IP	Destination Port	Interface	Forward to IP	Forward to Port
Click on the green	plus 🕂, t	to add a rule.					
Forwarding Rule							
Active							
Source IP							
Source Port							
Protocol	A	ll					Ŧ
Destination IP							
<b>Destination Port</b>							
Interface	In	iternet					٣
Forward to IP							
Forward to Port							
						Save	Close
Designation	Descriptio	n					

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
Origin IP	Here you can enter the IP addresses from which data packets are received. If there is an entry here, only packets from these addresses are forwarded.
Origin port	Here you can specify the ports through which data packets are received. Here is an en- try, then only packets specifically sent via these ports are forwarded.
Protocol	The following protocols are available: •All - the set rule applies to all protocols. •Tcp - the set rule applies only to the TCP protocol. •Udp - the set rule applies only to the UDP protocol.
	All - the set rule applies to all protocols.
	<ul> <li>Tcp - the set rule applies only to the TCP protocol.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Udp - the set rule applies only to the UDP protocol.</li> </ul>
	ICMP - the set rule applies only to the ICMP protocol.
Destination IP	Enter the IP address to which data packets are to be sent initially.



Designation	Description
Destination-Port	Enter the ports through which data packets are sent to the destination IP.
Interface	You can use this selection field to determine which interface the forwarding should nor- mally be used. The options are: Internet WAN Ethernet OpenVPN IPSecVPN PPTPVPN LAN Ethernet All * The selection field for the interface can vary depending on the type of router
Forward to the IP	Enter the IP addresses to which data packets should actually be forwarded.
	NOTICE

If there is an active forwarding-rule, at least one IP address must always be to which the data traffic should be forwarded.

**Forward to port** Enter the ports through which the data packets will be forwarded.

#### NOTICE

You can enter address **ranges** in the input fields for the **IP** address. Example of address ranges: 192.168.0.100-192.168.0.110 or 192.168.0.20/30

Address listings are **not** possible!

In the input fields for the **ports**, you can enter **ranges or enumerations**. Example of a port range: 502-504 Example of port enumeration: 502,677,555 Both, range and enumeration **can not** be used simultaneously in the same field.

## NOTICE

Ranges must be separated by a hyphen (-) and enumerated by comma (,).

No spaces between the elements to be separated!

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

# NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

Firewa	all general WA	N - LAN	LAN - WAI	N Forwarding NAT					
Forw	arding Rule							<b>e</b> +	
Active	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	Destination IP	Destination Port	Interface	Forward to IP	Forward to Port	
Yes	172.16.20.158		All	192.168.0.155		LAN Ethernet	172.16.20.120	×	
Yes	172.16.20.158	443	ТСР	192.168.0.155	443	LAN Ethernet	172.16.20.205	443 🖉	
No	10.28.8.12		All	172.16.20.105,172.16.20.205		WAN Ethernet	17.25.16.158	×	

Image 17: Forwarding Entry Example

# 23.4.1 Edit Forwarding Rule

### Change the entered rule order

Firewa	ll general WA	N - LAN	LAN - WAI	N Forwarding	NAT					
Forw	arding Rule									+
Active	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	Destination IP		Destination Port	Interface	Forward to IP	Forward to Port	
Yes	172.16.20.158		All	192.168.0.155			LAN Ethernet	172.16.20.120		<ul><li>✓</li></ul>
Yes	172.16.20.158	443	ТСР	192.168.0.155		443	LAN Ethernet	172.16.20.205	443	ĭ ×

Click on the Edit icon  $\square$  in the header of the overview to change the sequence of the entered change rules.

	Protocol	Source IP Source Port	Destination IP Destination Port	Forward to IP Forward to Port	Interface
~	All	172.16.20.158:	▶ 192.168.0.155: ▶	172.16.20.120:	LAN Ethernet
~	ТСР	172.16.20.158:443	192.168.0.155:443	172.16.20.205:443	LAN Ethernet
×	All	10.28.8.12: 🕨 1	72.16.20.105,172.16.20.205:	▶ 17.25.16.158:	WAN Ethernet
					Save Close

Here you can move up and down (drag and drop) to change the sequence of the firewall rules.

# Change/delete firewall rule

Firewa	ll general WA	N - LAN	LAN - WAI	N Forwarding	NAT					
Forw	arding Rule								2	+
Active	Source IP	Source Port	Protocol	Destination IP		Destination Port	Interface	Forward to IP	Forward to Port	1
Yes	172.16.20.158		All	192.168.0.155			LAN Ethernet	172.16.20.120		×
Yes	172.16.20.158	443	ТСР	192.168.0.155		443	LAN Ethernet	172.16.20.205	443	×

Click on the Edit icon  $\ensuremath{\textcircled{B}}$  at the end of the line of the registered rule to edit it.

Click the Delete icon . to delete the corresponding entry.

# 23.5 Security settings > NAT

#### 23.5.1 SimpleNAT

"SimpleNAT" allows you to grant access to an IP address from the LAN Network 1:1 in the WAN Ethernet network. To do this, a free WAN Ethernet address from the WAN network is registered as WAN IP. This IP address is then added to the WAN interface and directly "natted" to the registered LAN IP address" mapped 1:1. i.e. the LAN IP address can be accessed directly from the IP address of the WAN. This has the advantage that no ports etc. need to "forward".

Firewall general	WAN - LAN	LAN - WAN	Forwarding	NAT			
SimpleNAT	1:1 NAT						
01 1 NITE 1							
SimpleNAT Rules	s WAI	N IP Address	LAN	IP Address	Comment		
Active	WAI	Autess	LAN	IF Address	comment		
Click on the green SimpleNAT Rules	plus 🕂, to	add a rule.					
Active							
WAN IP Address							
LAN IP Address							
Comment							
Designation	Description						
Active	Check box	for enabling/	disabling this f	unction.			
WAN IP address	Enter here	Enter here a free WAN Ethernet address from the WAN network.					
LAN IP address	Enter here	Enter here the LAN IP address that you want to make accessible.					
Comments	Here you ca	an enter a co	mment for this	rule.			
SimpleNAT	1:1 NAT						

SimpleNAT Rules						
Active	WAN IP Address	LAN IP Address	Comment			
Yes	192.168.1.101	192.168.0.1	PLC	×		

Image 18: Example entry

### 23.5.1.1 Edit SimpleNAT Rule

### Change the entered rule order

WAN - LAN LAN - WAN	Forwarding NAT		
1:1 NAT			
S			
WAN IP Address	LAN IP Address	Comment	
192.168.1.101	192.168.0.1	PLC	×
172.16.20.100	172.16.20.158	PC	×
	WAN - LAN         LAN - WAN           1:1 NAT	WAN - LAN         LAN - WAN         Forwarding         NAT           1:1 NAT	WAN - LAN         LAN - WAN         Forwarding         NAT           1:1 NAT

Click on the Edit icon *in the header of the overview to change the sequence of the entered change rules.* 

SimpleN	AT Rules			
	WAN IP Address	LAN IP Address	Comment	
~	192.168.1.101	192.168.0.1	PLC	×
~	172.16.20.100	172.16.20.158	PC	
•	174.20.15.110	174.20.15.2	NAS	×
				Save

Here you can move up and down (drag and drop) to change the sequence of the entered rules.



# Change/delete SimpleNAT Rule

SimpleNAT Rules				┏ +
Active	WAN IP Address	LAN IP Address	Comment	
Yes	192.168.1.101	192.168.0.1	PLC	×
Yes	172.16.20.100	172.16.20.158	PC	C
				×

Click on the Edit icon at the end of the line of the registered rule to edit it.

Click the Delete icon . to delete the corresponding entry.								
Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.							
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.							

# NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

#### 23.5.2 1:1 NAT

**NAT Netaddress** 

Peer Netaddress

Using "1:1 NAT" it is possible to connect two networks that are in the same address range with each other. For example, if a network with the address 192.168.0.0/24 is to be connected to a network with the same address, this is only possible if one of the two networks is assigned a different address. With the help of NAT technology this is easy to do, because only the real network address (LAN network address) and the replacement address (NAT network address) are required. The NAT algorithm then ensures that the addresses in the packets accordingly are only replaced for the communication of these two networks. So you don't have to adapt the entire own network addressing.

Firewall general	WAN - LAN LAN - WAN	Forwarding NAT	
SimpleNAT	1:1 NAT		
1:1 NAT Rules			<b>2</b> +
Active	LAN Netaddress	NAT Netaddress	Peer Netaddress
Click on the green	plus <b>H</b> , to add a rule.		
1:1 NAT Rules			
Active			
LAN Netaddress			

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
LAN network ad- dress	Enter here a free LAN Ethernet address from the LAN network.
NAT network ad- dress	Enter here the LAN IP address that you want to make accessible.
Remote terminal net- work address	Enter the address of the network to which the translated packets are to be routed here. If the remote station also uses address translation, the NAT address of the remote station must be entered here.



SimpleNAT 1:1 N	TA			
1:1 NAT Rules				<b>8</b> +
Active	LAN Netaddress	NAT Netaddress	Peer Netaddress	
Yes	192.168.0.0/24	192.168.2.0/24	192.168.1.0/24	×

Image 19: Example entry

### 23.5.2.1 Edit 1:1 NAT rule

### Change the entered rule order

Firewall general	WAN - LAN LAN - WAN	Forwarding NAT		
SimpleNAT	1:1 NAT			
1:1 NAT Rules			⇒	<b>2</b> +
Active	LAN Netaddress	NAT Netaddress	Peer Netaddress	
Yes	192.168.0.0/24	192.168.2.0/24	192.168.1.0/24	×
Yes	172.16.0.0/24	172.16.2.0/24	172.16.1.0/24	×

Click on the Edit icon in the header of the overview to change the sequence of the entered change rules.

1:1 NAT	Rules			
	LAN Netaddress	NAT Netaddress	Peer Netaddress	
•	192.168.0.0/24	192.168.2.0/24	192.168.1.0/24	×
~	172.16.0.0/24	172.16.2.0/24	172.16.1.0/24	
×	198.20.0.0/24	198.20.2.0/24	198.20.1.0/24	×
				Save Close

Here you can move up and down (drag and drop) to change the sequence of the entered rules.

Firewall general	WAN - LAN LAN - WAN	Forwarding NAT		
SimpleNAT	1:1 NAT			
1:1 NAT Rules				<b>3</b> +
Active	LAN Netaddress	NAT Netaddress	Peer Netaddress	
Yes	192.168.0.0/24	192.168.2.0/24	192.168.1.0/24	×
Yes	172.16.0.0/24	172.16.2.0/24	172.16.1.0/24	<ul> <li>×</li> </ul>

### Change/delete 1:1 NAT rule

Click on the Edit icon at the end of the line of the registered rule to edit it.

Click the Delete icon **K**, to delete the corresponding entry.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close"</b> discards the current input/changes.

NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.



# 24 VPN

mbNET	RouterAl	pha		admin
	VPN > IPSec			?
	IPSec PPTP	OpenVPN		
System				
Network	Connections	Settings		
Serial	IPSec Connect	ions		+
Security Settings	Active	Connection name	Configuration valid	
VPN				

Here you can configure the communication via a VPN tunnel. You can choose from the following protocols:

- IPSec
- **PPTP**
- OpenVPN

#### 24.1 IPSec

NOTICE

As a rule, to enable communication via a VPN tunnel with IPSec, you need to enable the **500 UDP** and **4500 UDP** 

ports for your network.

#### 24.1.1 Configure IPSec connections

IPSec P	ртр	OpenVPN			
Connectio	ons	Settings			
IPSec Cor	nnecti	ons			+
Active		(	Connection name	<b>Configuration valid</b>	

Click on the green plus to add a connection.

To establish a VPN connection, follow the Configuration Wizard.



# 1 Connection settings

IPSec Connections			
1	2	3	4
Connection settings	Network settings	Authentication	Protocol settings
Active			
Connection name			
Connection type	Router - Router Connection		T
Connection Mode	Connect immediately		T
Peer Address (IP,DNS)			
	Next		

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
Connection Name	In the text box, enter a name for the connection.
Connection Type	Selection field for the connection type
	<ul> <li>Router - Router connection select this connection type to connect two com- plete networks together.</li> </ul>
	• <b>Client - Router Connection,</b> select this connection type if you want to connect a single PC to the router (mbNET).
Connection type	In the connection type selection = <b>router - router connection</b> you can use this selection field to specify when the connection is to be established.
	The following options are available:
	- Set up connection immediately
	- Set up connection for data traffic
	- Start with an active internet connection
	- Wall for incoming connection - Start when input* 1 is active (1 signal)
	- Start when input 2 is active (1 signal)
	- Start when input 3 is active (1 signal)
	- Start when input 4 is active (1 signal)
	- Start when input 1 is active (1 signal), stopping at 0-Signal
	- Start when input 2 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal
	- Start when input 3 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal
	- Start when Dialout button** was pressed
	* refers to digital inputs I1-I4 of the mbNET. ** Dial Out button on the mbNET front panel
Partner Addresses	You must specify the appropriate partner address at the router responsible for outgo-
(IP, DNS)	ing connections. This can be an IP address or the DNS name under which the oppo- site router is reachable.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



# 2 Network settings

IPSec Connections			
1	2	3	4
Connection settings	Network settings	Authentication	Protocol settings
Local network			
Peer network			
NAT-Traversal			
	Back Next		

Designation	Description
Local network	Enter here the address range of the local network in CIDR notation. e.g. 192.168.0.0/24
Partner Network (only for router - router connection)	Enter here the address range of the local network in CIDR notation. e.g. 192.168.10.0/24
Enable NAT transfer (only for router - router connection)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This setting is required if the VPN connection is established via the Internet and "natted" between the LAN and WAN (NAT: Network Address Translation). This setting is normally enabled.
Client has a fixed IP address or name (only for client router connection)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
Win2000/XP client (L2TP) (only for client router connection)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. Enable this function if the client is a PC with a Windows 2000 or XP operating system
Enable NAT transfer (only for client router connection)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.

## **3** Authentication

# (Authentication procedure = PSK)

IPSec Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Authentication process	PSK		•
PSK (Preshared Key)			
Local ID			
Peer ID			
	Back Next		

Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	<ul> <li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li> <li><b>PSK</b> Both keys must be known before the exchange of data between the client and the router. The longer the key is, the more secure the connection. Only one key can be specified. Even if several PSK connections are entered, the key is valid for only the <b>first</b> connection. <ul> <li>X.509</li> </ul></li></ul>
PSK (Preshared Key)	Enter your pre-shared key here.
Local ID	Enter a name for your router here. This name must be communicated to the partner.
Partner ID	Enter the name of the partner here.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



# (Authentication procedure = X.509)

IPSec Connections	
1 Connection settings	2     3     4       Network settings     Authentication     Protocol settings
Authentication process	X.509 ×
Certificate process	Authentication by peer certificate
	Unit 1 has One Certificate with the private key, certified by CA1 (own certificate) One copy of the Certificate from Unit 2 without the private key (remote certificate) Unit 2 has One Certificate with the private key, certified by CA2 (own certificate) One copy of the Certificate from Unit 1 without the private key (remote certificate)
Own Certificate	no valid certificates imported
Partner Certificate	no valid certificates imported
	Back Next

Designation	Description
Authentication proce- dure	<ul> <li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li> <li>PSK</li> <li>X.509</li> </ul>
Certificate Procedure	<ul> <li>Selection field for the certificate procedure</li> <li>Authentication by partner certificate Here, the certificates can be signed by different CAs. A private certificate + key (.p12 file) must be imported to each router. As well as a copy of the rele- vant partner certificate (.crt file) - of course without key.</li> <li>Authentication by a certificate from the same CA The root certificate (Signatory Authority, short CA) must be sent to the router and its own certificate including key (.p12 file) imported (<i>see Section: Sys- tem – Certificates</i>). The body must have the same root certificate and a cer- tificate signed by the CA, including key.</li> </ul>
Own certificate	Select the own certificate via the selection area.
<b>Partner Certificate</b> (for Certificate proce- dure = authentication by partner certificate)	Here you can select the certificate of the partner.

Designation	Description
Partner ID (for Certificate proce- dure = authentication by a certificate from the same CA)	In the event that you establish the connection, you must specify the ID of the part- ner. This ID is selected when creating the certificate (see creating certificates and revocation lists with XCA). It is the so-called subject of the certificate and must be entered in the following manner: /C=Country/ST=German federal state/L=city/O=company/OU=department/ CN=name_certificate/E=Email address If when creating the certificate not all fields under the subject tab are filled in, the corresponding entries should be left out (see creating certificates and revocation lists with XCA).
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



# **4 Protocol settings**

IPSec Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 3 Network settings Authentication	4 Protocol se	ttings
Phase 1 (IKE ISAKMP)			
Coding algorithm	3DES-192		*
Hash total algorithm	SHA1		٣
Lifetime of ISAKMP SA [seconds]	3600		
Aggressive Mode			
Phase 2 (ESP IPSec SA)			
Coding algorithm	3DES-192		٣
Hash total algorithm	SHA1		•
PFS (Perfect Forward Secrecy) active			
Lifetime of IPSec SA [seconds]	28800		
Do initiate Renogatition keys before end (rekey) active	V		
Number of tries for connection startup [0= no limit]	3		
Rekeymargin [seconds]	540		
Rekeyfuzz	100		
DPD (Dead Peer Detection)			
Delay [seconds]	30		
Timeout [seconds]	120		
Action after dead peer detected	Hold		٣
	Back		
		Save	Close

Phase 1 (IKE ISAKMP) - Key Exchange	
Designation	Description
Encryption algo- rithm	Select one of the algorithms in order to protect the key exchange. If you change the algorithm, then you will need to adapt those on the opposite side (router-router only).
Checksum algo- rithm	When the algorithm is set, the calculated keys and values are checked for correct- ness. If you change the algorithm, then you will need to adapt it on the opposite side (router-router only).

Phase 1 (IKE ISAKMP) - Key Exchange	
Designation	Description
Service life of the ISAKMP SA [sec- onds]	After expiration of the set time, key Phase 1 is discarded and the tunnel must be com- pletely rebuilt.
NOTICE	

This time must be greater than the option Rekeymargin [seconds] in phase 2.

Aggressive Mode	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.

Phase 2 (ESP IPSec SA) - IPSec security negotiation	
Designation	Description
Encryption algo- rithm	Select one of the algorithms in order to protect the tunnel. If you change the algo- rithm, then you will need to adapt it on the opposite side.
Checksum algo- rithm	When the algorithm is set, the calculated keys and values are checked for correct- ness. If you change the algorithm, then you will need to adapt those on the opposite side (router-router only).
PFS (Perfect For- ward Secrecy) en- abled	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. In cryptography, this feature means the property of encryption methods that cannot be detected from a disclosed key on previous or subsequent keys of a communica- tion channel. The function significantly increases the security of your tunnel, but also the quantity and generation rate of the key.

### NOTICE

The setting "**Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) enabled** is only allowed for the router-to-router connection. If you want to set up a client-router connection, PFS must be disabled.

Lifespan of the session key [sec- onds]	After the expiry of that time period, a new key for the current session key is generated and the previously used key is declared invalid.	
Initiate renegoti- ation of the key before expiry (Rekey) enabled	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If the checkbox is enabled, a renegotiation is started after the expiry of the time peri- od specified above. When disabled, the previous key is continued to be used.	
Number of con- nection attempts [0=no limit]	Here you can set how many attempts the mbNET should make in order to access the remote terminal until no further attempts are made. If you enter "0" (zero), the <b>mb</b> - <b>NET</b> continuously attempts to access the remote terminal.	
Rekeymargin [sec- onds]	After the expiry of the time period, a renegotiation is initiated.	
Rekeyfuzz [%]	This percentage is the maximum rate of increase for the specified intervals. By de- fault, this value is set to 100 percent, so that the intervals can be increased up to twice.	
Designation	Description	
--	--	--
Delay [seconds]	Each time the set time period expires, a review of the connection is made. If within the time window ( <b>timeout</b> ) there is no positive result, the action set for " <b>Action after detection of the connection error</b> " is executed.	
Timeout [seconds]	After expiration of the set time period of time in which no PING or data packet has passed through the tunnel, the selected action is executed under "Action after detection of the connection error".	
Action after detec- tion of the connec- tion error	You can use this selection field to specify how you want to proceed with connection if <b>timeout has</b> been reached. In the case of the mbNET, it is recommended that you stop the connection, as the terminal could only start a new connection attempt (for instance in the event of a power failure). You can also delete this current connection immediately after detecting the connection error. In this case, only session-specific data, such as hash values or session key are discarded. The entire connection itself remains in the Manet.	

DPD (Dead Peer Detection) - Detection for broken links

Click on "Save", after completing all settings.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.
	NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router.

Only after you confirm via "Apply Changes", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

<u>Apply changes</u>	Clicking on " <b>Apply changes</b> " will apply all stored settings/changes and store them permanently on the router.
Clear Changes	"Discard changes" will reset/discard all temporarily stored settings/changes.

Save

Close

## 24.1.2 IPSec settings

IPSec PPTP	OpenVPN	
Connections	Settings	
L2TP Server Co	onfiguration	2
Local IP Address	3	
Remote IP Addr	ess Begin	
Remote IP Addr	ess End	
IPSEC Debug s	ettings	
klipsdebug	no debug	
plutodebug	no debug	
IPSEC settings		
мти		

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

# L2TP server -configuration

For VPN IPSEC communication between the *mbNET* and a windows client, it is possible to use the L2TP server.

L2TP Server Configuration		
Local IP Address		
Remote IP Address Begin		
Remote IP Address End		

Designation	Description	
Local IP address	Enter the name or IP address that the server should have while communicating with the Windows Client (example: 192.168.0.103). You can also use an address from the IP range of the LAN interface. You just need to make sure that this address is not already assigned to another computer in the LAN.	
Lower range for the remote IP ad- dress	Here you can find a freely selectable range of IP addresses from the network of the server. The server assigns IP addresses to the VPN clients from this area. When s	
Upper range for the remote IP ad- dresslecting the IP range, note that client addresses must the above selected "local IP address"	lecting the IP range, note that client addresses must be in the same network, such as the above selected "local IP address"	



# 24.2 PPTP

# 24.2.1 PPTP server configuration

IPSec PPTP OpenVPN	
Server Clients	
PPTP Server configuration	
Active	No
automatic configuration	Yes
Encryption Configuration	
Encryption	MPPEV2/all
Authentication Configurati	ion 🕑
Authentication via PAP	Yes
Authentication via CHAP	No
Authentication via MS- CHAP	Yes
Authentication via MS- CHAP V2	No

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

# PPTP server configuration

PPTP Server configuration		
Active		
automatic configuration	No	
Local IP Address or Range	192.168.0.100	
remote IP Address or Range	192.168.0.101-110	
Give DNS Address to the Client		
Give WINS Address to the Client		
	Save	Close

Designation	Description	
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.	
automatic configu- ration	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function. If this option is set to "YES", the PPTP server is configured automatically. (Suitable addresses for the remote PCs are used in a similar way to the LAN address of the router).	
local IP address or range	Enter the LAN IP of the router.	
Remote IP ad- dress or range	Enter either an IP address or an address pool from the LAN IP range of the router (for example: LAN-IP = 192.168.0.100> entry = 192.168.0.101-110).	
DNS Server IP Ad- dress to Client	Enter the IP address of the DNS server here. In the normal case, this is the same lo- cal IP address previously chosen for the router.	
WINS Server IP Address to Client	Enter the IP address of the WINS server here. Leave this field empty or enter the same IP address, as in the case of "local IP ad- dress or range" and "DNS Server IP Address to client".	

# **Encryption configuration**

Encryption Config	guration	
Encryption	MPPEV2/all	Ŧ
		Save Close
Designation	Description	
Encryption	Selection field for the type of eneryption	

Encryption	Selection field for the type of encryption:
	• None
	• MPPEV2/40
	• MPPEV2/128
	MPPEV2/all
	NOTICE

**IMPORTANT**: You should **always** enable encryption of your VPN connections, otherwise unauthorized access to networks, machines, etc. is possible!



### Authentication configuration

You can use the following checkboxes to select the authentication protocols (PAP,CHAP,MSCHAP,MSCHAP V2).

Authentication Configuration		
Authentication via PAP	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	
Authentication via CHAP		
Authentication via MS-CHAP	Ø	
Authentication via MS-CHAP V2		

Save

Close

Designation	Description
Authentication via PAP	Here the Client User Name/Password combination is sent to the host for the neces- sary time to accept or reject the client authentication.
Authentication us- ing CHAP	Here, the authentication is controlled by the host. If client has dialled in, then it will be prompted for authentication by the host. The combination of user name and password is then transmitted encrypted by the client via MD5. If the user data is sent with that of the host computer, then the authentica- tion is accepted. If not, it will be rejected. If the authentication is accepted, the user data is constantly checked periodically dur- ing the connection.
Authentication via MS-CHAP	Microsoft-developed authentication protocol.
Authentication via MS-CHAP V2	Microsoft-developed authentication protocol.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save</b> " temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.

#### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

#### 24.2.2 PPTP client configuration

IPSec PPTP	OpenVPN			
Server Cli	ents			
PPTP Clients				
Active	Name	Host Name or IP	IP local	IP remote

Click on the green plus to add a client.

PPTP Clients	
Active	
Name	
Host Name or IP	
IP local	
IP remote	
Authentication	PAP v
Encryption	None
Username	
Password	
Start Connection on	Connect immediately •

Save

Close

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. Enable this feature if you want to use as the mbNET as a VPN client.
Name	Enter a name for the client here.
Host name or IP	Enter the name or IP address used by the client to access the server. Example 123456789@mbNET.mymbnet.biz or 80.187.33.55
Local IP	Option input field If no address range for remote IPs is registered on the server, you can specify a freely selectable local IP for the VPN connection. This setting option is used here for compatibility with other routers.
IP remote terminal	Enter the network address of the server in CIDR notation (example: 192.168.0.0/24) to have a route to the server network. In the case of a router to router connection the real network address of the server must be entered here. For client router connections, the field remains empty.
Authentication	
Encryption	Selection field for the type of encryption: <ul> <li>None</li> <li>MPPEV2/40</li> <li>MPPEV2/128</li> <li>MPPEV2/all</li> </ul>



Designation

Description

NOTICE

**IMPORTANT**: You should **always** enable encryption of your VPN connections, otherwise unauthorized access to networks, machines, etc. is possible!

User name	Enter a user name		
Password	Enter a new password		
Start connection for	<ul> <li>selction field, when, or under what condition the connection should be started.</li> <li>Set up connection immediately</li> <li>Set up connection for data traffic</li> <li>Start with an active internet connection</li> <li>Wait for incoming connection</li> <li>Start when input* 1 is active (1 signal)</li> <li>Start when input 2 is active (1 signal)</li> <li>Start when input 3 is active (1 signal)</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal)</li> <li>Start when input 1 is active (1 signal), stopping at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 2 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 3 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 4 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when input 5 is active (1 signal), Stop at 0-Signal</li> <li>Start when Dialout button** was pressed</li> </ul>		
	Save Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.		
	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.		
	NOTICE		
	Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via " <b>Apply Changes</b> ", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.		

## 24.3 OpenVPN

#### **OpenVPN Basics**

- OpenVPN basically works with two tunnel IP addresses. That is, each connection has two IP addresses, over which the traffic is handled.
- Depending on the authentication method OpenVPN either works in point-to-point procedure (in the case of static key or no authentication), or server/client mode (in the case of X.509 certificates).
- OpenVPN can have three different authentication methods:

- none: No certificate or key is necessary. This method is mainly used to test the connection. The tunnel data will NOT be encrypted.
- static key: A 1024 bit key that each partner needs is generated for the connection. Similar to the password.
- X.509 certificates: For certificates, a distinction is made between the following variants:
  - a) Each participant needs the same RootCA and an own certificate signed by RootCA.
  - b) As a) but with additional user and password prompt.

c) As b) but without own certificate. This means that the participants need only a RootCA and user/ password.

- OpenVPN can use an http proxy server as an outgoing connection.
   Important for the integration into existing company networks with internet access -
- The setting of the transmission protocol (UDP or TCP) is freely adjustable with OpenVPN. As well as the port numbers to be used.

#### 24.3.1 Configure OpenVPN connections

IPSec PPTP	OpenVPN		
Connections	Static Keys		
OpenVPN Conn	nections		۶.
Active	Connection name	Configuration valid	
Click on the area	en plus to add a connection.		

To establish a VPN connection, follow the Configuration Wizard.

#### 24.3.1.1 Connection type: Client router connection

Select the connection type if you want to connect one single PC to the router (mbNET).

#### NOTICE

Only **one** "client to network" connection can be created. Depending on the authentication method, the client obtains an IP from a specified range or each participant gives its required address.

Example:	
Client PC	mbNET
[10.1.0.6]VPN – TUNNEL	[10.1.0.5] <> ROUTING <> LAN [192.168.0.100]

# 1 Connection settings

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Active			
Connection name			
Connection type	Client - Router Connection		*
	Next		

Designation	Description	
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.	
Connection Name	In the text box, enter a name for the connection.	
Connection Type	<ul> <li>Selection field for the connection type</li> <li>Router - Router connection select this connection type to connect two complete networks together.</li> <li>Client - Router connection</li> </ul>	
	select this connection type if you want to connect a single PC to the router (mbNET).	
	Choose here the Connection Type <b>Client - Router connection</b> .	
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.	

# 2 Network settings

OpenVPN Connections			
Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Local IP Address of the VPN tunnel	10.1.0.1		
Peer IP Address of the VPN tunnel	10.1.0.2		
Client NAT behind the local network (The client will send the IP of the gate for traffic through the local network)	way		
	Back	Next	

Designation	Description
Local IP Address of the VPN tunnel	Enter the IP address of the local VPN tunnel endpoint. e.g. 10.1.0.5
Partner IP address of the VPN tunnel	Enter the IP address of the partner VPN tunnel endpoint. e.g. 10.1.0.6
Replace the sender IP address of the client by the LAN IP address (SNAT)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. All packages in the LAN network receive the sender IP of the mbNET. You can then actually no longer distinguish in the LAN which sender it is now, but partici- pants in the LAN must then also NOT have entered the mbNET as a gateway.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



### **3** Authentication

#### (Authentication method = no authentication)

OpenVPN Connections				
Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings	
Authentication process	no authentication		~	]
	Back Next			

#### NOTICE

Select this method only to test the connection, as **all the data is transmitted in clear text**! **Always** enable encryption of your VPN connections, otherwise unauthorized access to networks, machines, etc. is possible!

Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	<ul> <li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li> <li>No Authentication this type should only be selected to test the connection, as all the data is transmitted in clear text! Always enable encryption of your VPN connections, otherwise unauthorized access to networks, machines, etc. is possible!</li> </ul>
	<ul><li>Static key</li><li>X.509</li></ul>
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



## (Authentication procedure = static key)

OpenVPN Connections			
Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Authentication process	static key		~
Static Keys			~
	Back Next		

## NOTICE

For symmetric encryption with a static key, you first need to generate a key (VPN OpenVPN static key) or import a previously created one. Note, however, that each participant needs to receive the key in a secure manner.

Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	<ul> <li>Selection field for the authentication procedure <ul> <li>no authentication</li> </ul> </li> <li>Static key <ul> <li>For a symmetrical encryption with a static key, you must first generate a key</li> <li>(VPN OpenVPN static key) or import a previously created one. Note, however, that each participant needs to receive the key in a secure manner.</li> <li>X.509</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Static Key	Selection field with all imported keys to date.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.

## (Authentication procedure = X.509)

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Authentication process	x.509		~
CA Certificate			*
Own Certificate			*
Additional user and password verification	Yes		~
Use only CA and User/password for client verification			
	Back Next		

### NOTICE

For this authentication method, you must first create/import your certificates (see: System > Certificates)

Designation	Description	
Authentication process	<ul> <li>Selection field for the authentication process</li> <li>no authentication</li> <li>Static key</li> <li>X.509</li> </ul>	
CA certificate	Selection field with all certificates imported to date. This shows the selected root cell certificate. If you have not yet imported a certificate, import your root cell certificates or create one of your own (see Section: System > Certificates).	
Own certificate	Selection field with all certificates created to date. This displays your own certificate. If you have not yet imported a certificate, import your certificate now or create one of your own.	
Additional user and password verification	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function. If you select "Yes", user data is requested from the client. These credentials must match an entry from "System users" from the OpenVPN server.	
Use only CA and User/password for client verification	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. In this case only the CA certificate and the user login are used for authentication.	
NOTICE		

Note that you still need to have your own certificate and it must be selected!

Next Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



# **4 Protocol settings**

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Networkadapter			
Adaptertype	TUN		*
Protocol			
Coding algorithm	Blowfish wtih CBC (128 bit)		*
Protocol	UDP		*
Local VPN port	1194		
Peer VPN port	1194		
Miscellaneous			
Bind the local IP-address and port			
Allow the peer to change the IP-address dynamically			
LZO compress active		<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	
Ping interval [s]	10		
Ping restart [s]	60		
MTU [bytes]	1500		
Fragment the UDP packets in [bytes]			
Regenerate a new key after [s]	3600		
Send more Information to the System Protocol			
Miscellaneous			
Enable connection through a HTTP proxy			
HTTP proxy name			
HTTP proxy port			
HTTP proxy username			
HTTP proxy password			
	Back		
			Save Close



Networkadapter	
Designation	Description
Adaptertype	Selection field for the virtual kernel driver: - TUN - TAP

Protocol	
Designation	Description
Coding algorithm	Selection field for the method used by the mbNET to encrypt OpenVPN data: - Blowfish with CBC (128 bit) - DES with CBC (64 bit) - RC2 with CBC (128 bit) - DES-EDE with CBC (128 bit) - DES-EDE3 with CBC (192 bit) - DESX with CBC (192 bit) - Blowfish with CBC (128 bit) - RC2 with CBC (40 bit) - CAST5/128 with CBC (128 bit) - RC2 with CBC (64 bit) - AES with CBC (128 bit) - AES with CBC (192 bit) - AES with CBC (192 bit) - AES with CBC (256 bit)

# NOTICE

Note that each of the communication partners must use the same method.

Protocol	Selection field for the transfer protocol: - UDP - TCP
Local VPN port	Select the port for the OpenVPN connection (example: Port 80 TCP or 1194 UDP).
Peer VPN port	However, you can also freely select the port numbers, if they are not already in use by another program. It is also possible for the server and client to use different ports (Server: 1194 UDP Client: 20500 UDP). Note that both know the port of other and these are also set!

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
Bind the local IP- address and port	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the "bind" setting of OpenVPN. OpenVPN cannot dynamically change the ports during the connection.
Allow the peer to change the IP-ad- dress dynamically	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "float" and allows the partner to change the address.
LZO compress ac- tive	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the OpenVPN "comp"-Izo setting.

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
Ping interval [s]	Input field for a time period [in seconds] If the VPN tunnel is not used by the end of the period, a ping is sent to the VPN part- ner. This corresponds to the OpenVPN "ping" setting.
Ping restart [s]	Input field for the time period [in seconds] if a ping or a data packet is not received from the VPN partner within the time period, the OpenVPN tunnel is restarted. This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "ping-restart".Maximum
MTU [bytes]	Maximum Transver Size This corresponds to the setting "tun-mtu". The default size is 1500 bytes.
Fragment the UDP packets in [bytes]	All UDP packets that are larger than [bytes] are divided into several packages (fragment). This corresponds to the setting "fragment". The default setting is that the packages are not split (" ").
Regenerate a new key after [s]	Renew the security key after [seconds] (reneg-sec) This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "reneg-sec". By default, this time is set to 3600 seconds.
Send more Infor- mation to the Sys- tem Protocol	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the setting "verb 3" of OpenVPN. This feature is disabled by de- fault.

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
Enable connection through a HTTP proxy	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this function is activated, the outgoing connection attempts to pass through a proxy server. The following fields must be completed for this purpose.
HTTP proxy name	Input field for the DNS names or the IP address of your proxy server.
HTTP proxy port	Input field for the port number on which your proxy server receives requests. A common port number, for example, would be 8080 (in the case of Linux Proxy "Squid", it would be 3128 by default).
HTTP proxy user- name	If the proxy server requires authentication, enter the user data for the proxy.
HTTP proxy pass- word	If you do not know this data, ask your network administrator.



Click on "Save", after completing all settings.

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.
	NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

Apply changes	Clicking on " <b>Apply changes</b> " will apply all stored settings/changes and store them permanently on the router.
Clear Changes	"Discard changes" will reset/discard all temporarily stored settings/changes.

#### 24.3.1.2 Connection type: Router-router connection - server mode

Select this connection type to connect two complete networks together.

Here you can create a "network to network" connection. Depending on the authentication method, the dialing party receives an IP from a defined area or each participant specifies his required address.

Example:

LAN	mbNET Client		mbNET Server	LAN
[192.168.9.100] •	<>ROUTING<> [10.1.0.2]	VPN-TUNNEL	[10.1.0.1] <>ROUTING<>	[192.168.0.100]

#### Server mode

To establish the connection, select = "Wait for incoming connection" from the selection list. The mbNET is therefore in "server mode" and will be referred to as "server" in the further documentation.

### **1** Connection settings

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Active		<ul><li>✓</li></ul>	
Connection name			
Connection type	Router - Router Connection		*
Link connection	Wait for incoming Connection		*
	Next		

Designation	Description		
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.		
Connection name	In the text box, enter a name for the connection.		
Connection type Selection field for the connection type			
Router - Router connection			
	Client router connection		
Link connection	Selection field for when or under which conditions the connection should be started. Choose here: Wait for incoming connection		

#### NOTICE

If "Wait for incoming connection" was selected to establish the connection, this mbNET is in server mode and is referred to as "server" in the further documentation.

The mbNET is in the "wait mode" when "Waiting for incoming connection" is selected.

With all other options, this mbNET is in "client mode" and is referred to as "client". In this case, the mbNET on the other side is in "waiting position".

### NOTICE

One of the routers must be in "wait mode"!

Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



# 2 Network settings

OpenVPN Connections			
1	2	3	4
Connection settings	Network settings	Authentication	FIOLOCOI Sellings
Local IP Address of the VPN tunnel	10.1.0.1		
Peer IP Address of the VPN tunn	10.1.0.2		
Local network	172.16.27.0/24		
Peer network			
	Back Next		

Designation	Description	
Local IP Address of the VPN tunnel	Enter the IP address of the local VPN tunnel endpoint. e.g. 10.1.0.5	
Peer IP Address of the VPN tunnel	Enter the IP address of the partner VPN tunnel endpoint. e.g. 10.1.0.6	
Local network	Enter your own network address in CIDR notation (as standard for the router: 192.168.0.0/24)	
Peer network	Enter the network address of the subscriber (client) in CIDR notation (192.168.5.0/24).	
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.	

### **3** Authentication

### (Authentication method = no authentication)

OpenVPN Connections				
Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings	
Authentication process	no authentication		~	]
	Back Next			

#### NOTICE

This type should only be selected to test the connection, as **all the data is transmitted in clear text**! **Always** enable encryption of your VPN connections, otherwise unauthorized access to networks, machines, etc. is possible!

Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	Selection field for the authentication procedure     No Authentication
	Static key
	• X.509
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



### (Authentication procedure = static key)

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Authentication process	static key		~
Static Keys			~
	Back Next		

## NOTICE

For symmetric encryption with a static key, you first need to generate a key (VPN OpenVPN static key) or import a previously created one. Note, however, that each participant needs to receive the key in a secure manner.

Designation	Description
Authentication process	<ul><li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li><li>no authentication</li></ul>
	Static key
	• X.509
Static Keys	Selection field with all imported keys to date.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.

### (Authentication procedure = X.509 - server mode)

If "Wait for incoming connection" was selected to establish the connection, this mbNET is in server mode

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Authentication process	x.509		<b>v</b>
CA Certificate Own Certificate			× 
Additional user and password verification	Yes		~
Use only CA and User/password for client verification			
	Back Next		

## NOTICE

For this authentication method, you must first create/import your certificates (see: "System > Certificates")

Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	<ul><li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li><li>no authentication</li></ul>
	Static key
	• X.509 If you do not have any certificates, then you first need to create your own certifi- cates using the XCA program.
	<ul> <li>CA certificate: This shows the selected root cell certificate. If you have not yet imported a certificate, import your root cell certificates or create one of your own (see Section: System &gt; Certificates).</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Own certificate: This displays your own certificate. If you have not yet imported a certificate, import your certificate now or create one of your own.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>additional query of the VPN user name and password: This is how the user data is requested by the client. These credentials must match an entry from "System users" from the OpenVPN server.</li> </ul>
CA Certificate	Selection field with all certificates imported to date.
Own Certificate	Selection field with all certificates created to date.
Additional user and password ver- ification	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function. If you select "Yes", user data is requested from the client. These credentials must match an entry from "System users" from the OpenVPN server.



Designation	Description	
Use only CA and User/password for client verification	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. In this case only the CA certificate and the user login are used for authentication.	
NOTICE		
Note that you still need to have your own certificate and it must be selected!		

Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.

# **4 Protocol settings**

OpenVPN Connections		
1 Connection settings	2 3 Network settings Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Networkadapter		
Adaptertype	TUN	~
Protocol		
Coding algorithm	Blowfish wtih CBC (128 bit)	*
Protocol	UDP	*
Local VPN port	1194	
Peer VPN port	1194	
Miscellaneous		
Bind the local IP-address and port		
Allow the peer to change the IP-address dynamically		
LZO compress active	2	
Ping interval [s]	[10	
Ping restart [s]	60	
MTU [bytes]	1500	
Fragment the UDP packets in [bytes]		
Regenerate a new key after [s]	3600	
Send more Information to the System Protocol		
Miscellaneous		
Enable connection through a HTTP proxy		
HTTP proxy name		
HTTP proxy port		
HTTP proxy username		
HTTP proxy password		
	Back	
		Save Close

Network interface controller	
Designation	Description
Encryption algo- rithm	Selection field for the virtual kernel driver: - TUN - TAP

Protocol	
Designation	Description
Encryption algorithm	Selection field for the method used by the mbNET to encrypt OpenVPN data: - Blowfish with CBC (128 bit) - DES with CBC (64 bit) - RC2 with CBC (128 bit) - DES-EDE with CBC (128 bit) - DES-EDE3 with CBC (192 bit) - DESX with CBC (192 bit) - Blowfish with CBC (128 bit) - RC2 with CBC (40 bit) - CAST5/128 with CBC (128 bit) - RC2 with CBC (64 bit) - AES with CBC (192 bit) - AES with CBC (192 bit) - AES with CBC (256 bit)

# NOTICE

Note that each of the communication partners must use the same method.

Encryption algo- rithm	Selection field for the transfer protocol: - UDP - TCP
Local VPN port	Select the port for the OpenVPN connection (example: Port 80 TCP or 1194 UDP).
Partner VPN port	<ul> <li>However, you can also freely select the port numbers, if they are not already in use by another program.</li> <li>It is also possible for the server and client to use different ports (Server: 1194 UDP Client: 20500 UDP). Note that both know the port of other and these are also set!</li> </ul>

Miscellaneous		
Designation	Description	
The local IP address and local port will be fixed (bind)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the "bind" setting of OpenVPN. OpenVPN cannot dynami- cally change the ports during the connection.	
Allows the partners to dynamically change the IP address (float)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "float" and allows the partner to change the address.	
Use LZO compression (comp-lzo)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the OpenVPN "comp"-Izo setting.	
Connect every [s] check (ping)	Input field for a time period [in seconds] If the VPN tunnel is not used by the end of the period, a ping is sent to the VPN partner. This corresponds to the OpenVPN "ping" setting.	
Restart connection af- ter [s] of inactivity (ping-restart)	Input field for the time period [in seconds] if a ping or a data packet is not received from the VPN partner within the time period, the OpenVPN tunnel is restarted. This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "ping-restart".	

Miscellaneous		
Designation	Description	
Maximum transfer size (MTU) in [bytes] (tun- mtu)	This corresponds to the setting "tun-mtu". The default size is 1500 bytes.	
All UDP packets that are larger than [bytes] are divided into several packages (frag- ment)	This corresponds to the setting "fragment". The default setting is that the packages are not split (" ").	
Renew the security key after [seconds] (reneg-sec)	This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "reneg-sec". By default, this time is set to 3600 seconds.	
Send more output infor- mation to the logging system (verb 3)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the setting "verb 3" of OpenVPN. This feature is disabled by default.	

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
Use a HTTP proxy serv- er as the outgoing con- nection	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this function is activated, the outgoing connection attempts to pass through a proxy server. The following fields must be completed for this purpose.
Name of the HTTP proxy server (DNS or IP)	Input field for the DNS names or the IP address of your proxy server.
Port of the HTTP proxy server	Input field for the port number on which your proxy server receives requests. A common port number, for example, would be 8080 (in the case of Linux Proxy "Squid", it would be 3128 by default).
Login name on the HTTP proxy server	If the proxy server requires authentication, enter the user data for the proxy. If you do not know this data, ask your network administrator.
Login password on the HTTP proxy server	

Click on "Save", after completing all settings.

Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.
	NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

<u>Apply changes</u>	Clicking on " <b>Apply changes</b> " will apply all stored settings/changes and store them permanently on the router.
<u>Clear Changes</u>	"Discard changes" will reset/discard all temporarily stored settings/changes.

#### 24.3.1.3 Connection type: Router-router connection -client mode

Select this connection type to connect two complete networks together.

Here you can create a "network to network" connection. Depending on the authentication method, the dialing party receives an IP from a defined area or each participant specifies his required address.

Example:

LAN	mbNET Client		mbNET Server	LAN
[192.168.9.100] <>ROU	JTING<> [10.1.0.2]	<b>VPN-TUNNEL</b>	[10.1.0.1] <>ROUTING<>	[192.168.0.100]

#### **Client mode**

To establish a connection, select one of the **active** connection options from the selection list. The active connection options include all options **except** = "**Wait for incoming connection**". The mbNET is therefore in "**client mode**" and will be referred to as "client" in the further documentation.

#### **1** Connection settings

OpenVPN Connections				
Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings	
Active		<ul><li>✓</li></ul>		
Connection name				
Connection type	Router - Router Co	onnection		~
Link connection	Connect when inp	ut 1 has High-signal, disconr	nect at Low-Signal	~
Remote maintenance active on	Digital Input 2 (Hig	ıh)		~
	One of this routers	has to be set to wait mode!		
Peer address (IP,DNS)				
Disconnect connection after inactivity [	5]			
	Next			

Designation	Description
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function.
Connection name	In the text box, enter a name for the connection.
Connection type	Selection field for the connection type
	Router - Router connection
	Client router connection

Link connection	<ul> <li>Selection field for when or under which conditions the connection should be started.</li> <li>Connection immediately</li> <li>Start with an active internet connection</li> <li>Wait for incoming connection</li> <li>Connect when input* 1 has High-signal</li> <li>Connect when input 2 has High-signal</li> <li>Connect when input 3 has High-signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal</li> <li>Connect when input 1 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 3 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 5 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 6 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> <li>Connect when input 7 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal</li> </ul>
-----------------	---

\*\* refers to digital inputs I1-I4 of the mbNET. \*\* Dial Out button on the mbNET front panel

## NOTICE

If one of the active connection options was selected to establish the connection, then this mbNET is in "client mode" and will be referred to as "client" in the further documentation.

The mbNET on the other side is in "waiting position".



Designation	Description	
NOTICE		

One of the routers must be in "wait mode"!

Remote mainte- nance active on	You can choose from: - Digital Input 1 (High) - Digital Input 2 (High) - Digital Input 3 (High) - Digital Input 4 (High)

#### NOTICE

The Link connection and Remote maintenance active on functions are part of the concept of 2-level security.

A description of the 2-level security can be found after this table. "For description".

Peer addresse (IP, DNS)	Here, in the case of the OpenVPN client, the public IP address or DynDNS name (ex- ample: 0987654321@mbnet.mymbnet.biz) of the OpenVPN server must be entered.
Disconnect con- nection after inac- tivity [s]	Enter the time after which an existing connection is terminated if no data packets are transmitted during this time. If nothing is entered, or if the entry is "0", the connection remains.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.

#### 2-level security

Link connection	Connect when input 1 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal	~
Remote maintenance active on	Digital Input 2 (High)	~

If you have selected one of the options under "Link connection"

- Connect when input 1 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect when input 2 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect when input 3 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal

you can also select one of these options in combination under "Remote maintenance active on":

- Digital Input 1 (High)
- Digital Input 2 (High)
- Digital Input 3 (High)
- Digital Input 4 (High)

#### Example:

A connection is established by connecting input 1.

#### Level 1

The router is connected.

The remote service technician now has access to the router's internal services (web server, data monitoring, etc.).

However, the service technician cannot route into the LAN segment.



Remote maintenance is only active when digital input 2 is also activated (High).

#### Level 2

The routing between the remote maintenance provider and the LAN segment is enabled.

All participants in the LAN segment can now be reached transparently.

By resetting the signal in input 2 to Low, remote maintenance is interrupted again.





# 2 Network settings

OpenVPN Connections			
1	2	3	4
Connection settings	Network settings	Authentication	Protocol settings
Local IP Address of the VPN tunne	10.1.0.1		
Peer IP Address of the VPN tunnel	10.1.0.2		
Local network	192.168.0.0/24		
Peer network			
Do NAT for all outgoing traffic			
	Back Next		

Designation	Description		
Local IP Address of the VPN tunnel	Enter the IP address of the local VPN tunnel endpoint. e.g. 10.1.0.5.		
Peer IP Address of the VPN tunnel	Enter the IP address of the partner VPN tunnel endpoint. e.g. 10.1.0.6.		
Local network	Enter your own network address in CIDR notation (as standard for the router: 192.168.0.0/24).		
Peer network	Enter the network address of the subscriber (client) in CIDR notation (192.168.5.0/24)		
Do NAT for all outgo- ing traffic	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. The option replaces the sender's address with the current Internet IP address. This is necessary for compatibility with " <b>mdex</b> ".		
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.		

### **3** Authentication

### (Authentication method = no authentication)

OpenVPN Connections				
Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings	
Authentication process	no authentication		~	·]
	Back Next			

### NOTICE

This type should only be selected to test the connection, as **all the data is transmitted in clear text**! **Always** enable encryption of your VPN connections, otherwise unauthorized access to networks, machines, etc. is possible!

Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	<ul><li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li><li>No Authentication</li></ul>
	Static key
	• X.509
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.



### (Authentication procedure = static key)

OpenVPN Connections			
1 Connection settings	2 Network settings	3 Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Authentication process	static key		~
Static Keys			~
	Back Next		

### NOTICE

For symmetric encryption with a static key, you first need to generate a key (VPN OpenVPN static key) or import a previously created one. Note, however, that each participant needs to receive the key in a secure manner.

Designation	Description	
Authentication procedure	<ul><li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li><li>no authentication</li></ul>	
	Static key	
	• X.509	
Static Key	Selection field with all imported keys to date.	
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.	

#### (Authentication procedure = X.509 - client mode)

If one of the following options was selected for "Link connection", this mbNET is in client mode and is referred to as "Client".

- Connection immediately
- Start with an active internet connection
- Connect when input 1 has High-signal
- Connect when input 2 has High-signal
- Connect when input 3 has High-signal
- Connect when input 4 has High-signal
- Connect when input 1 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect when input 2 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect when input 3 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect when input 4 has High-signal, disconnect at Low-Signal
- Connect while pushing "Dial Out" button

OpenVPN Connections					
1 Connection settings Network	2 rk settings	3 Authentica	ation	4 Protocol settin	gs
Authentication process	x.509				~
CA Certificate					~
Own Certificate					~
Additional user and password verification	Yes				~
Username					
Password					
Do not use my own certificate for verification. Use only CA and User/password verification	5				
Peer must be TLS Server					
	Back	Next			
				Save	Close

NOTICE

For this authentication method, you must first create/import your certificates (see: System > Certificates)



Designation	Description
Authentication procedure	<ul> <li>Selection field for the authentication procedure</li> <li>no authentication</li> <li>Static key</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Static key</li> <li>X.509</li> <li>If you do not have any certificates, then you first need to create your own certificates using the XCA program.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>CA certificate: This shows the selected root cell certificate. If you have not yet imported a certificate, import your root cell certificates or create one of your own (see Section: System &gt; Certificates).</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Own certificate: This displays your own certificate. If you have not yet imported a certificate, import your certificate now or create one of your own.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>additional query of the VPN user name and password: This is how the user data is requested by the client. These credentials must match an entry from "System users" from the OpenVPN server.</li> </ul>
CA certificate	Selection field with all certificates imported to date.
Own certificate	Selection field with all certificates created to date.
Additional user and password ver- ification	"Yes / No" selection field to activate/deactivate this function. If you select "Yes", user data is requested from the client. These credentials must match an entry from "System users" from the OpenVPN server.
User name	These credentials must match an entry from "System users" from the OpenVPN serv-
Password	er!
Do not use my own certificate for verification. On- ly use the CA and user/password	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. In this case only the CA certificate and the user login are used for authentication.

### NOTICE

Note that you still need to have your own certificate and it must be selected!

Peer must be TLS server	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This additional security option checks whether the server certificate has the entry "Netscape Certificate Type: SSL Server". If this suffix to the server certificate is <b>not</b> <b>present</b> , the pairing process will be aborted.
Next	Click the Next button to continue the configuration.

# **4 Protocol settings**

OpenVPN Connections		
1 Connection settings	2 3 Network settings Authentication	4 Protocol settings
Networkadapter		
Adaptertype	TUN	~
Protocol		
Coding algorithm	Blowfish wtih CBC (128 bit)	*
Protocol	UDP	*
Local VPN port	1194	
Peer VPN port	1194	
Miscellaneous		
Bind the local IP-address and port		
Allow the peer to change the IP-address dynamically		
LZO compress active		
Ping interval [s]	[10	
Ping restart [s]	60	
MTU [bytes]	1500	
Fragment the UDP packets in [bytes]		
Regenerate a new key after [s]	3600	
Send more Information to the System Protocol		
Miscellaneous		
Enable connection through a HTTP proxy		
HTTP proxy name		
HTTP proxy port		
HTTP proxy username		
HTTP proxy password		
	Back	
		Save Close

Network interface controller		
Designation	Description	
Encryption algo- rithm	Selection field for the virtual kernel driver: - TUN - TAP	
Protocol		
---------------------------	--	
Designation	Description	
Encryption algo- rithm	Selection field for the method used by the mbNET to encrypt OpenVPN data: - Blowfish with CBC (128 bit) - DES with CBC (64 bit) - RC2 with CBC (128 bit) - DES-EDE with CBC (128 bit) - DES-EDE3 with CBC (192 bit) - DESX with CBC (192 bit) - Blowfish with CBC (128 bit) - RC2 with CBC (40 bit) - CAST5/128 with CBC (128 bit) - RC2 with CBC (64 bit) - AES with CBC (128 bit) - AES with CBC (192 bit) - AES with CBC (192 bit) - AES with CBC (256 bit)	

# NOTICE

Note that each of the communication partners must use the same method.

Encryption algo- rithm	Selection field for the transfer protocol: - UDP - TCP
Local VPN port	Select the port for the OpenVPN connection (example: Port 80 TCP or 1194 UDP).
Partner VPN port	However, you can also freely select the port numbers, if they are not already in use by another program. It is also possible for the server and client to use different ports (Server: 1194 UDP Client: 20500 UDP). Note that both know the port of other and these are also set!

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
The local IP ad- dress and local port will be fixed (bind)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the "bind" setting of OpenVPN. OpenVPN cannot dynamically change the ports during the connection.
Allows the part- ners to dynamical- ly change the IP address (float)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "float" and allows the partner to change the address.
Use LZO compres- sion (comp-lzo)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the OpenVPN "comp"-Izo setting.
Connect every [s] check (ping)	Input field for a time period [in seconds] If the VPN tunnel is not used by the end of the period, a ping is sent to the VPN part- ner. This corresponds to the OpenVPN "ping" setting.

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
Restart connec- tion after [s] of inactivity (ping- restart)	Input field for the time period [in seconds] if a ping or a data packet is not received from the VPN partner within the time period, the OpenVPN tunnel is restarted. This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "ping-restart".
Maximum trans- fer size (MTU) in [bytes] (tun-mtu)	This corresponds to the setting "tun-mtu". The default size is 1500 bytes.
All UDP packets that are larger than [bytes] are divided into sever- al packages (frag- ment)	This corresponds to the setting "fragment". The default setting is that the packages are not split (" ").
Renew the secu- rity key after [seconds] (reneg- sec)	This corresponds to the OpenVPN setting "reneg-sec". By default, this time is set to 3600 seconds.
Send more output information to the logging system (verb 3)	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. This corresponds to the setting "verb 3" of OpenVPN. This feature is disabled by de- fault.

Miscellaneous	
Designation	Description
Use a HTTP proxy server as the out- going connection	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this function is activated, the outgoing connection attempts to pass through a proxy server. The following fields must be completed for this purpose.
Name of the HTTP proxy server (DNS or IP)	Input field for the DNS names or the IP address of your proxy server.
Port of the HTTP proxy server	Input field for the port number on which your proxy server receives requests. A common port number, for example, would be 8080 (in the case of Linux Proxy "Squid", it would be 3128 by default).
Login name on the HTTP proxy server	If the provuser requires authentication, enter the user data for the provu
Login password on the HTTP proxy server	If you do not know this data, ask your network administrator.

Click on "Save", after completing all settings.

Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close"</b> discards the current input/changes.

# NOTICE Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "Apply Changes", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently. Apply\_changes Clicking on "Apply changes" will apply all stored settings/changes and store them permanently on the router. Clear Changes "Discard changes" will reset/discard all temporarily stored settings/changes.

# 24.4 Static key (key management)

Here you can import or even generate static keys. All keys contained can be downloaded as a copy under "Download".

IPSec PPTP	OpenVPN
Connections	Static Keys
list of imported	static keys 🛨
Name	
Click on the green	plus to add a key.
Name	
	Generate
import static key	
File	Datei auswählen Keine ausgewählt
	Import
Generate static	key land
Name	Enter a name for the key here
Generate	To generate the key, click the "Generate" button.
Import static key	,
File	Click the "Select file" button and navigate to the save location of the key file.
Import	To import a key, click the "Import" button.

IPSec PPT	P OpenVPN		
Connections	Static Keys		
list of impor	rted static keys		•
Name			
mystatickey		* ×	
importstaticke	≥у	± ×	
To download a	a key, click on the Download	button 🛃.	

To delete a key, click on the Delete button

# 25 IO-Manager

mbA/ET	mbNET			a	admin :
	IO-Manager > S	erver			?
	Server Tags	Status Diagnosis			
System					
Network	Server Lo	gging			
Serial	Server list				+
Security Settings	Active	Driver	Name	Description	
VPN				-	
IO-Manager					

The I / O Manager integrated in the router fulfills the following tasks:

- Display of PLC variables
- Read PLC variables and, within a preset interval, save them on a USB stick (logging).
- Store the logged archives (GZIP) on an external FTP server.

Currently tags of the type flag, timer, counter, input, output, data block and peripheral can be read by an S7 controller via RFC1006.

Communication between the mbNET and the PLC takes place via the Ethernet interface or the MPI/PROFIBUS interface of the router.

NOTICE

If communication is to take place via the MPI / PROFIBUS interface, the RFC1006 protocol must be activated in the settings for COM2 (Serial> COM2> COM2 Settings).

#### COM2 Settings

Protocol	MPI/PROFIBUS Network Driver	٣
Enable RFC1006		
Own station address		
Enable RFC1006 Routing		
Station address of the routing gateway		

#### Limits:

- · Max. four connections to the controllers
- Max. 256 tags points (variables) per connection
- Max. size of a tag = 32 bits (DWORD)

# 25.1 Configuring the PLC connection

	mbNET					admin
	IO-Manager	> Server				?
2 million	Server Tag	js Status Dia	gnosis			
System	Server	Logging				
Serial	Server	Logging				
Security Settings	Server list	Driver		Name	Deseri	etian.
VPN	Active	Drive	r	Name	Descri	ption
IO-Manager						
Click the Add button	<b>H</b> to add a	a PI C connec	tion			
	0.500					
Server						
Active						
Driver		S7_ISO	ТСР			•
Name						
Description						
SPS IP addres	s					
SPS slot addr	ess					
		L				
					Save	Close
					Jave	CIUSE
Designation	Description					
Active	Checkbox to	o enable / disa	ble this con	nection.		
Driver	Selected dri	ver (only S7 IS	SOTCP is a	vailable here)	•	
Name	Enter a unio This field ca	ue name for thin not contain	his connecti any spaces	on. or special cha	aracters.	

Designation	Description				
SPS slot address	• For MPI/I the bus a	<ul> <li>For MPI/PROFIBUS communication, the PLC slot address is the same as the bus address.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>For Ether (usually 2</li> </ul>	met communication, 1 2).	his is the slot sp	ace of the PLC on t	he rack
Save	(Save) to ac	cept the input / chang	ges.		
mhniet	, mbNET				adm
	IO-Manager >	Server			(
System	Server Tag	s Status Diagnosis			
Network	Server	Logging			
Serial	Server list				+
Security Settings	Active	Driver	Name	Description	
		ST ISOTOD	PLC1	PLC	Ø
VPN	Yes	J/ JJUILP		I LO	

To edit a PLC connection, click on the edit button  $\ensuremath{\textcircled{B}}$ .

To delete a PLC connection, click the delete button

# 25.2 Logging - configuration

	mbNET	adm	iin 🚦
	IO-Manager > Server	C	?
Svetom	Server Tags Status	s Diagnosis	
Network	Server Logging		
Serial			
Security Settings	Settings Logging	60	1
VPN IO-Manager	Maximum time until archiving the log file [h]	0	
Alarm manager	Settings FTP upload	C.	1
Extras	Interval [min]	0	
Status	FTP-Server address		
	FTP-Server Username		
Apply changes	FTP-Server Password	*****	
Clear Changes			

Click on the respective edit button *C* to configure the logging settings and the settings for the FTP upload.

NOTICE

The logging settings apply to all PLC connections.

For logging, it is necessary that a storage medium (USB stick) is connected to the USB socket of the mbNET.

#### **Settings Logging**

60								
0								
							Save	Close
	60 0	60 0 Save						

Designation	Description
Interval [s]	Enter here the interval (in seconds) after which the tags are to be written to the stor- age medium.
Maximum time until archiving the log file [h]	After this period of time (in hours), the log file is archived and a new log file is started.



#### Settings FTP upload

The logged tags can additionally be archived on an FTP server. The following settings are necessary for this.

Settings FTP upload	
Internal Project	
FTP-Server address	
FTP-Server Username	
FTP-Server Password	
	Save Close

Designation	Description
Interval [min]	Enter the interval (in minutes) after which the log file is to be compressed and up- loaded to the FTP server. The log file remains compressed - in addition to the storage medium (USB stick).
FTP-Server ad- dress	Enter the address of the FTP server here.
FTP-Server User- name	Enter the user name for authentication on the FTP server here.
FTP-Server Pass- word	Enter the password for authentication at the FTP server here.

## NOTICE

The format of the log files corresponds to the CSV format. The current file always has the name logfile.log and is stored in the subdirectory \logfiles\ on the USB stick. Archived files are organized as follows: "logfile.log. [Date (yyyymmdd)] \_ [time (hhmmssms)]. Gzip

# 25.3 Status

······································	mbNET	mbNET							
moner	IO-Manager >	IO-Manager > Status							
	Server Tag	s Status I	Diagnosis						
System	Ctature .								
Network	Status								
Serial	PLC-1	PLC-2							
Security Settings	Description	Address	Value	Time stamp	Valid				
VPN	Counter	DBx.DBBy	Error - could not read datapoint	2019.06.13,16:19:23.468	0				
IO-Manager									

Here, the status of each tag is displayed for all created PLC connections.

Designation	Description
Description	Display of the description given under "Tags".
Address	The address of a tag
Value	Displays the tag value in the display format chosen when the tag was created (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). If the value is invalid or if the data point value can not be read, an error message appears: "Error - could not read datapoint"
Time stamp	Time when the tag was read out. If the data point is invalid or can not be read, the current device time is displayed here.
Valid	Display whether the data point value is valid / achievable (1) or invalid (0).

# 25.4 Create tags

mbA/ET	mbN	ET		admin 🚦			
	IO-Mana	iger > Tags		?			
	Server	Tags Statu	is Diagnosis				
System	Tag Lis	+					+
Network							
Serial	Active	Server	Address	Display format	Description	Interval [x 100ms] Logging	
Security Settings						[x roomo]	
VPN							
IO-Manager							

#### NOTICE

Before you can create one or more tags, a PLC connection must be created.

To create a tag, click on the add button

Server				
Active				
Server				•
Address				
Display format				•
Description				
Interval [x 100ms]				
Logging				
			Save	Close



DesignationDescriptionActiveCheckbox for activating / deactivating the created datapoint.ServerSelection box with all previously created PLC connections.AddressEnter the tag address for this PLC connection here. For the address syntax of the driver, see table below.Display formatSelection box for the desired display format (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). This format is used in the status display and in the logging data.DescriptionFree input field.Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.		
ActiveCheckbox for activating / deactivating the created datapoint.ServerSelection box with all previously created PLC connections.AddressEnter the tag address for this PLC connection here. For the address syntax of the driver, see table below.Display formatSelection box for the desired display format (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). This format is used in the status display and in the logging data.DescriptionFree input field.Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Designation	Description
ServerSelection box with all previously created PLC connections.AddressEnter the tag address for this PLC connection here. For the address syntax of the driver, see table below.Display formatSelection box for the desired display format (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). This format is used in the status display and in the logging data.DescriptionFree input field.Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Active	Checkbox for activating / deactivating the created datapoint.
AddressEnter the tag address for this PLC connection here. For the address syntax of the driver, see table below.Display formatSelection box for the desired display format (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). This format is used in the status display and in the logging data.DescriptionFree input field.Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Server	Selection box with all previously created PLC connections.
Display formatSelection box for the desired display format (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). This format is used in the status display and in the logging data.DescriptionFree input field.Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Address	Enter the tag address for this PLC connection here. For the address syntax of the driver, see table below.
DescriptionFree input field.Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Display format	Selection box for the desired display format (BIN, DEZ, HEX, FLOAT). This format is used in the status display and in the logging data.
Interval [x 100ms]In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.LoggingIf this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Description	Free input field.
Logging If this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated the data point is only displayed on the status display.	Interval [x 100ms]	In this interval, this data point is read by the PLC.
	Logging	If this option is activated, this tag is enabled to be logged. If this option is not activated, the data point is only displayed on the status display.

#### Address syntax for the driver S7\_ISOTCP

DBx.DBXy.z =	data block x, data bit y.z, BOOL	IDy =	input double word y, DWORD
DBx.DBBy =	data block x, data byte y, BYTE	Oy.z =	output bit y.z, BOOL
DBx.DBWy =	data block x, data word y, WORD	OBy =	output byte y, BYTE
DBx.DBDy =	data block x, data double word y, DWORD	OWy =	output word y, WORD
Fy.z =	flag bit y.z, BOOL	ODy =	output double word y, DWORD
FBy =	flag byte y, BYTE	Ply.z =	peripheral input bit y.z, BOOL
FWy =	flag word y, WORD	PIBy =	peripheral input byte y, BYTE
FDy =	flag double word y, DWORD	PIWy =	peripheral input word y, WORD
ly.z =	input bit y.z, BOOL	PIDy =	peripheral input double word y, DWORD
IBy =	input byte y, BYTE	Ty =	Timer y, TIMER
IWy =	input word y, WORD	Cy =	Counter y, COUNTER

Table 2: Address syntax for the driver S7\_ISOTCP

mbA/ET	mbNET								admin
	IO-Mana	IO-Manager ≽ Tags							
Quelon	Server	Tags S	Status	Diagnosis					
System	Tag Lis	st							+
Network									
Serial	Activo	Conver		Address	Display	Description	Interval	Longing	
Security Settings	Active	Server		Address	format	Description	[x 100ms]	Logging	
VPN	Yes	PLC-1		DBx.DBBy	BIN	Counter	5	Yes	
IO-Manager	Yes	PLC-2		My.z	DEZ	On/OFF	3	No	Z

Image 20: Beispiel-Datenpunkte

To edit a data point, click the edit button  $\textcircled{\begin{tabular}{ll} \label{eq:constraint} \label{eq:constraint}}$  .

# 25.5 Diagnosis

mbale T	mbNET	admin
	IO-Manager > Diagnosis	?
	Server Tags Status Diagnosis	
System		
Network	IO-Manager logging	
Serial	Jun 13 16:16:48 nero user.warn io_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.105 - try to Jun 13 16:16:51 nero user.warn io manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.106 - try t	o reconne o reconne
Security Settings	Jun 13 16:16:51 nero user.info io_manager: IO-Manager successfully initialized - start main loop Jun 13 16:16:54 nero user.warn io manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.105 - try t	o reconne
VPN	Jun 13 16:16:58 nero user.warn io_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.106 - try to	o reconne
IO-Manager	Jun 13 16:17:01 nero user.warn io_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.105 - try to Jun 13 16:17:04 nero user.warn io_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.106 - try to	o reconne o reconne
Alarm manager	Jun 13 16:1/:0/ nero user.warn 10_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.105 - try to Jun 13 16:17:10 nero user.warn io manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.106 - try t	o reconne
Extras	Jun 13 16:17:13 nero user.warn io_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.105 - try to Jun 13 16:17:17 nero user.warn io_manager: Could not connect to PLC with IP 192.168.0.106 - try to	o reconne o reconne
Status	lun 13 16:17:20 nero user.warn io manager: Could not connect to PIC with TP 192.168.0.105 - trv to	o reconne

Here you can view and analyze the logging.

# 26 Alarm Management

The mbNET alarm management provides the following functions:

- Status query (1/0) of the four digital inputs (I1 I4) with subsequent action:
  - ° Send an email, SMS, an Internet SMS
  - Perform a device reboot
- independent switching of the two digital outputs for specific events:
  - ° On in the event of a device fault
  - ° On in the event of an active internet connection
  - ° On in the event of an active VPN connection
  - ° On in the event of an active user portal connection
  - ° Off

# 26.1 Digital inputs - Configuration

NOTICE

The configuration of input 1 is representative for inputs 2 - 4.

	mbNET		admin
moive i	Alert manager > Inpu	ts	?
	Inputs Outputs		
System			
letwork	Input 1 Input 2	Input 3 Input 4	
Serial	Innut 1 Settings		2
Security Settings	Active	No	
/PN	Query on	Low (0)	
Alert manager	Action	E-mail	
Extras	Text		
State	E-Mail address		
	current State		
	Input 1	•	
	Input 2	•	
	Input 3	•	
	Input 4	•	
	Dial Out	•	

Input 1 settings displays the settings of the selected input.

**Current status** displays the current status (1 or 0) of the individual inputs, as well as an LED symbol for the Dial-out button.

- grey LED symbol = no signal (0) Low = 0 3.2 V DC
- green LED symbol = Signal is present (1) High = 8 30 V DC

Click the Edit icon , to configure the selected entry.



Input 1 Settings

Active		
Query on	Low (0)	T
Action	E-mail	T
E-Mail address		
Text		

Save

Close

Designation	Description	
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. When this feature is enabled, the input is activated ("armed").	
Query on status	Selection field "Low (0)/High (1)/No" to query the status of the relevant input.	
Campaign	Selection field for the action to be performed when the selected status of the relevant input occurs: <ul> <li>Email - an email message is sent.</li> </ul>	
	Restart - there is a device reboot.	
	• SMS (only for Manet types with GSM modem) - here an SMS is sent.	
	Internet SMS - here an SMS is sent.	
E-mail address	Enter the email addresses to which the alarm text should be sent.	
Phone number	Enter the telephone number to which the alarm text should be sent via SMS/Internet SMS.	

# NOTICE

You can enter up to three telephone numbers (separated by a comma ",").

Text	iput field for the alarm text, to be sent by email or SMS. he following special characters are allowed in the text: ÜÖ,;.:#+*~^°!()=?§\$%&/<>		
Save	Clicking on <b>"Save"</b> temporarily saves the current entries/changes. <b>But the changes are not yet enabled</b> .		
Close	Clicking on "Close" discards the current input/changes.		

#### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# 26.2 Digital outputs - Configuration

#### NOTICE

The configuration of output 1 is representative for output 2.

	mbNFT		admin
mbNET			0
	Alert manager 7 C	vacputs	$\odot$
System	Inputs Outputs		
Netzwerk	Output 1 Ou	tput 2	
Seriell	Output 1 Setting		ß
Sicherheitseinstellungen	Function	On by internet connection	
VPN	Function	Toggle output	
Alarmmanagement			
Extras	current State		
Status	Output 1	•	
	Output 2	•	

The settings of the selected output are under **Output 1 settings**.

By clicking on the button "**Switch output**", the status of the selected output mode is switched (from 0 to 1 or from 1 to 0).

Current status displays the current status (1 or 0) of the individual outputs by means of a LED symbol.

- grey LED symbol = Signal level 0 = Output not switched
- green LED symbol = Signal level 1 = Output switched

Click the Edit icon , to configure the selected output.

Output 1 Settings			
Function	On by internet connection		T
		Sav	ve Close

Designation	Description	
Function	<ul> <li>Selection field for the condition for switching the selected output:</li> <li>Off Select these settings, if the selected output should not be switched.</li> <li>On, for a fault in a device Select this setting in the event of a device fault if the selected output should be set to signal level 1.</li> <li>On, for an active internet connection, Select this setting if the selected output should be set to 1 when connected to</li> </ul>	
	the Internet. For example, an active Internet connection can thus be signalled by a lamp connected to the corresponding output.	
	<ul> <li>On, for an active VPN connection,</li> <li>Select this setting if the chosen output should be set to 1, once a user is connected to the mbNET via an active VPN connection.</li> <li>If the active connection is lost, the output is switched off again.</li> <li>For example, an active Internet connection can thus be signalled by a lamp connected to the corresponding output.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>On, for an active user portal connection, Select this setting if the selected output should be set to 1, as soon as at least one mbCONNECT24 user has an active connection to the mbNET. If the active connection is lost, the output is switched off again. For example, an active Internet connection can thus be signalled by a lamp connected to the corresponding output.</li> </ul>	
Save	Clicking on "Save" temporarily saves the current entries/changes. But the changes are not yet enabled.	
Close	Clicking on <b>"Close</b> " discards the current input/changes.	

#### NOTICE

Temporary stored settings/changes are saved until a reboot of the router. Only after you confirm via "**Apply Changes**", will the changes be applied (activated) and stored permanently.

# mbNET.

# 27 Extras



In the category Extras you will find the submenus

- Lua
- IoT
- RoKEY

# 27.1 LUA

#### LUA (programming language)

Via Extras > LUA LUA scripts can be imported and run.

IoT-Device	admin <b>i</b>
Extras > Lua	?
Lua IoT RoKEY	
LUA Control	ľ
Active No	
LUA Running	
LUA Script	
LUA Script	
4	ł
LUA output	
4	•
LUA logging	
ч Ч	P

mbNET.

#### **LUA Controller**

#### Use the LUA Control

- to enable LUA
- import LUA scripts
- see whether LUA is currently running (LUA running)

grey LED symbol 🔍 = LUA is not running

green LED symbol 🔍 LUA running

Lua		
LUA Control		ß
Active	No	
LUA Running	٠	

Click the Edit icon  $\fbox$  to edit the corresponding function.

LUA Settings	
Active	
Import	Datei auswählen Keine ausgewählt
	Import
	Save Close

Designation	Description	
Active	Check box for enabling/disabling this function. If this checkbox is activated, the LUA script runs after each router reboot.	
Import	Choose a LUA-script via the file browser (* .lua) and confirm the action by clicking on the "Import" button.	
ΝΟΤΙCE		

There can only be uploaded and executed one LUA script at a time. An imported script automatically overwrites an existing script without security confirmation.



#### LUA script

#### LUA Script

```
-- function CONN_plc() --
function CONN_plc(...)
local arg = {...};
local _ip = arg[1];
local _slot = arg[2];
local PLC_HANDLE = nil;
PLC_HANDLE = plc_connect("ISOTCP", _ip, _slot);
return PLC_HANDLE;
end:
```

Here you can see the source code of the currently imported LUA script.

NOTICE

This function is only used to display the current script. The source code cannot be edited here.

#### LUA output



All readouts of the script are displayed here. For example, readouts with "print".

#### LUA logging



All error messages are shown here.

# 27.2 IoT > Control (mbEDGE)

In the submenu IoT you configure and manage the mbEDGE functionality.

#### NOTICE

**mbEDGE** is a software kit that extends the router mbNET and mbNET.rokey to an edge gateway. The basis for this is the container platform Docker, in which several user applications are executed separately. With Node-RED there is a graphic development tool with whose function blocks the user can create individual IOT applications.

Control Information IoT card not found! Docker Service Disabled	
Information IoT card not found! Docker Service Disabled	
IoT card not found! Docker Service Disabled	
Docker Service Disabled	
Service Disabled	
Daemon	

#### NOTICE

Information on the configuration and setting options of **mbEDGE** can be found in the relevant manual on https://www.mbconnectline.com/de/support/downloads.html

# NOTICE

Further information such as application examples, FAQs, videos and product information about **mbEDGE** can be found in our Helpdesk at www.mbconnectline.com

#### 27.2.1 IoT > Control > Docker - activate mbEDGE

NOTICE

If you have not already done so, insert the mbEDGE SD card into the SD card slot of the mbNET.

#### Click the edit icon to enable the Docker service.

Lua IoT RoKE	ΞY	
Control		
Information		
IoT card not found	1	
Docker		
Service	Disabled	



• Enable the Docker settings. Click on "Save" to save the change.

Docker Settings		
Enable Z		
	Save	Close

# Apply changes

Confirm the activation by clicking on "Apply changes".

NOTICE

The mbEDGE service is now started. This may take a few minutes at the first activation.

In the now expanded menu, you can activate additional services and make settings.

Lua IoT	RoKEY			
Control	Network	Key Management	Firmware	
Information	1			
Serial numbe	er		EA000175	
License Type	•		advance	
Docker				C
Service			Enabled	

#### 27.2.2 IoT > Control - after activating mbEDGE

After activating mbEDGE, you will see the full scope of the IoT menu with all submenus.

Lua loT RoKEY	
Control Network Key Management	Firmware
Information	
Serial number	EA000175
License Type	advance
Docker	
Service	Enabled
Daemon	•
Docker Management	
Service	Disabled
Link to User Interface	% Management
Flows and Dashboard	
Service	Disabled
Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only mbEDGE)	
Link to Flows(Node-Red)	% Flows
Link to Dashboard(Node-Red)	% Dashboard
Backup and Delete flows	2

#### Information

- · Serial number of the mbEDGE card
- License Type Here you can see the license type of your mbEDGE card: mbEDGE.start or mbEDGE.advanced.

#### Docker

- Service
   Activate your mbEDGE license here.
- Daemon LED symbol indicates whether the Docker daemon is active (green symbol).

#### **Docker Management**

- Service
   Activate Docker Management here.
- Link to User Interface
   The "Management" button takes you to the container management.



#### **Flows and Dashboard**

- Service Here you activate access to your flows and your dashboard.
- Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only mbEDGE) Here you can switch from HTTPS to an unencrypted connection (HTTP). The unencrypted connection only applies to Flows and Dashboard and not to access to the mbNET GUI.
- Link to Flows(Node-Red) The "Flows" button takes you to the Node-Red flows
- Link zu Dashboard(Node-Red) The "Dashboard" button takes you to the Node-Red dashboard.

#### **Backup and Delete flows**

• Here you can save and / or delete the flows you have created. Saved flows can be read in again via Node-Red.

#### 27.2.3 IoT > Control - activate Docker Management

You can only activate Docker Management if you have activated "Docker Management Admin" under System > Users.

NOTICE

System > User									?		
Info	СТМ	Settings	Web	User (	Certificates	Memory de	evices	Logging	Configurat	ion Firmware	
User	manag	ement									+
Usern	ame	Password	l Fu	II name	Adminis - tration	Quick- start	Modem Dialin	VPN Dialin	Flows (Node Red) Admin	Docker Management Admin	
admin		*******	** Ad	Iministrato	r 🖉	1	<b>V</b>	V	<b>V</b>		ß

NOTICE

Activate Docker Management only if you have purchased an mbEDGE.advance license.

Click on the edit icon to activate Docker Management.

Docker Management		
Service	Disabled	
Link to User Interface	% Management	

 Activate the Docker Management. Click on "Save" to save the change.

Docker Management Settings							
Enable 🗸							
	Save	Close					

Apply changes

Confirm the activation by clicking on "Apply changes".

#### 27.2.3.1 Link to User Interface

Docker Management				
Service	Enabled			
Link to User Interface	𝗞 Management			

#### Click on the "Management" button to get to the container management.



← → C 172.16.27.210:9000/log	gin	0 <sub>2</sub>	☆	L	G	*	θ	
	mbNET					C	?)	
	Login							
	Username							
	Decoward							
	Password Password							
	L og in							
	Log III	_						

A new browser window, with a login, will open.

The access data for this are:

a) User name and password for the user you created in the user management for accessing Node-Red

or

b) the current user data for the administrator (device access data)
 standard user name = admin
 standard password = the device password of the mbNET (see label on the back of the mbNET)

Further information such as application examples, FAQs, videos and product information about *mbEDGE* can be found in our Helpdesk at www.mbconnectline.com

#### 27.2.4 Flows and Dashboard

#### 27.2.4.1 Activate flows and dashboard

• Click on the edit icon to activate the Flows and Dashboard Service.

Flows and Dashboard						
Service	Disabled					
Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only mbEDGE)						
Link to Flows(Node-Red)	% Flows					
Link to Dashboard(Node-Red)	% Dashboard					

 Activate the flows and dashboard settings. Click on "Save" to save the change.

Flows und Dashboard Einstellungen	
Aktivieren	
Verwende HTTP anstatt HTTPS (nur für mbEDGE)	
	Save Close

#### Apply changes

Confirm the activation by clicking on "Apply changes".

After activation, the links to "Flows(Node-Red)" and "Dashboard(Node-Red)" are activated.

Flows and Dashboard	2
Service	Enabled
Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only mbEDGE)	No
Link to Flows(Node-Red)	% Flows
Link to Dashboard(Node-Red)	𝗞 Dashboard

#### NOTICE

If you want to access the flows and dashboard via an unsecured HTTP connection, activate the checkbox "Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only for mbEDGE)".

The unencrypted connection only applies to Flows and Dashboard and not to access to the mbNET GUI.

#### 27.2.4.1.1 Link to Flows (Node-RED)

Flows and Dashboard	Ø
Service	Enabled
Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only mbEDGE)	No
Link to Flows(Node-Red)	% Flows
Link to Dashboard(Node-Red)	∞ Dash

By clicking on the "Flows" button you will be redirected to Node-Red-Flows.

← → C (172.16.27.210:1880/log	jin	6 <u>8</u>	\$ x	G	* (	θ	:
	mbNET				Ċ	2	
	Login Username Password Password						
	Log in						

A new browser window, with a login, will open.

The access data for this are:

a) User name and password for the user you created in the user management for accessing Node-Red

or

b) the current user data for the administrator (device access data)
 standard user name = admin
 standard password = the device password of the mbNET (see label on the back of the mbNET)

Node-RED					🗾 deploy 👻
Q Filter Nodes	Hello World	Flow 1	▶ + ≡	i info	i 🗼 💷 🔻
v dashboard *				<ul> <li>Informa</li> </ul>	tionen
button	Land/Take off			Flow	"c4e9378b.9c2128"
				Name	Hello World
dropdown 9		Text fi	om Switch abc	Status	Aktiviert
switch					tion

#### 27.2.4.1.2 Link to Dashboard (Node-RED)

Flows and Dashboard	Ø
Service	Enabled
Use HTTP instead of HTTPS (only mbEDGE)	No
Link to Flows(Node-Red)	% Flows
Link to Dashboard(Node-Red)	So Dashboard
	ann

By clicking on the "Dashboard" button you will be redirected to Node-Red-Flows.

← → C 172.16.27.210:18	30/login/ui	See 2	📕 🍹 🗯 😁 🗄
	mbNET		?
	Login		
	Username		
	Password		
	Password		
	Log in	_	

A new browser window, with a login, will open.

The access data for this are:

a) User name and password for the user you created in the user management for accessing Node-Red

or

 b) the current user data for the administrator (device access data) standard user name = admin standard password = the device password of the mbNET (see label on the back of the mbNET)

Hello World		
	Simple	
	Text from Switch <b>Hello Sky</b>	
	Land/Take off	••



# 27.2.5 Backup and Delete flows

Here you can save and / or delete the flows you have created. Saved flows can be read in again via Node-Red.

► Click the edit icon.

Backup and Delete flows	
Backup and Delete flows	
lame of this configuration flows.json	
	Download Delete Close

Choose an option (Download or Delete)

#### 27.3 Network

Extras > IoT	?		
Lua loT RoKEY			
Control Network Key Management Firmware			
Docker Interface	Ø		
Docker IP Address			
Subnetmask			
Firewall Settings for Node-Red			
Allow following TCP ports			
Allow following UDP ports			

#### Docker Interface

Adjust the IP address of the Docker Daemon (runtimer for the IoT services and Nod-Red) if an address conflict with other network settings exists / is to be expected. The default setting is 172.16.0.1/24

#### Firewall Settings for Node-Red

Here, you add firewall rules to open ports for Node-RED.

By default, a network socket node in Node-RED has access only from the inside out. Therefore, any "listener socket" created in Node- RED is not accessible via LAN / WAN. For example, an OPC UA server can not be reached via LAN / WAN. Unless you release the OPCUA server port here in a fire-wall rule.

Firewall Settings for Nod	e-Red		
TCP-Ports			
UDP-Ports			
		Save	Close

• Enter the port number(s) that you want to enable.

#### NOTICE

Multiple entries of port numbers must be separated by commas.

#### Apply changes

Confirm the changes by clicking on "Apply changes".



#### 27.4 Key Management

Only the mbNET with which an mbEDGE card is paired can open the encrypted container. So that you can access your data at any time - even if the mbNET is no longer available - a **Backup-Key** is required.

If the mbNET is no longer reachable before you have generated the Backup-Key (eg in the event of total failure due to damage), there is no way to access the card.

#### NOTICE

Immediately after initializing the mbEDGE card, assign a Backup-Key to avoid data loss!

Extras > IoT			?
Lua loT	RoKEY		
Control	Network	Key Management	Firmware
Settings			
Backup-Key	/	Empty	
Active Key	Storage	Device	

#### 27.4.1 Create Backup-Key

Lua loT	RoKEY		
Control	Network	Key Management	Firmware
Settings			
Backup-Ke	y	Empty	
Active Key	Storage	Device	

• Click on the edit icon in **Settings**.

Please Enter Your New Backup-Key and License Code to generate Backup-Key

- ► Fill in the input fields under Key Settings.
  - The Backup-Key must consist of at least 8 characters.
  - You can find the License Code on the back of the mbEDGE packaging.
- Click on "Save"

# Apply changes

Confirm the changes by clicking on "Apply changes".

Control	Network	Key Management	Firmware
Settings			
Backup-Key		Created	
Active Key S	torage	Device	

After you have saved your entries, you can change or delete the Backup-Key.



#### 27.5 Firmware

Extras > Io1	Г				?	
Lua loT	RoKEY					
Control	Network	Key Management	Firmware			
mbEDGE-	mbEDGE-NodeRED					
Current Firmware Version			v1.0.0-advance			
Latest Available Firmware Version			v1.0.0-advance			
mbEDGE-Portainer.io						
Current Firmware Version			1.24.0-1			
Latest Available Firmware Version			1.24.0-1			
Start Upgrade			► Upgrade			
Upgrade Progress/State			Finished Upgrade			

#### Under "Current Firmware Version" you can see

- · the current firmware versions of
  - o mbEDGE-NodeRED
  - ° mbEDGE-Portainer.io

The available firmware version is displayed under "Latest Available Firmware Version".

Requirement: The mbNET must be connected to the Internet.

• Click the "**Upgrade**" button to upgrade the firmware versions.

# 27.6 RoKEY

IoT-Device	admin
Extras > RoKEY	?
Lua IoT RoKEY	
Key Switch	
Key Switch position	Online (ONL)
Key Switch	
Code Switch	
Code Switch Position	0
Code Switch	25 8 LOS

#### **Key Switch position**

Here, the current position of the *mbNET.rokey* key switch is displayed.

#### Switch position Function

- RST Loading the factory settings
- OFF It is **not** possible to establish a VPN connection. Modem devices can not connect to the Internet.
- ONL It **can** be established a VPN connection. With modem devices an Internet connection can be established.
- REM It **can** be established a VPN connection. Including routing to the LAN side of the router. With modem devices an Internet connection **can** be established. Including routing to the LAN side of the router.

#### **Code Switch Position**

The coding switch is designed for future features, but still without function!

# 28 Status (information and analysis)

When errors/faults occur, these can be analysed on the basis of specific status information. Thus, for example, when the LED Stat (Status) is flashing, this indicates that a system error has occurred on the mbNET. For this purpose, e.g. via **Status > System** based on the listing it may be possible to determine the cause of the problem.

#### NOTICE

The display of the individual functions/submenus depends on the mbNET type and can vary.

#### 28.1 Status > Interfaces

#### **WAN** interfaces

State > Interfaces								
Interfaces Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPT>
WAN Interface								
MAC Address	70:B3:	D5:8D:90:C	7					
IP Address	192.16	68.1.100						
Subnetmask	255.25	55.255.0						
DNS Server 1	8.8.8	3						
Gateway	192.10	58.1.1						
Received Bytes	0.0B							
Sent Bytes	0.0B							

Designation	Description				
MAC address					
IP address	Display of the settings on the WAN connection (external connection) of the mbNET.				
Subnet mask	As soon as the mbNET has a physical connection to the network, or the mbNET is				
DNS Server 1	assigned a static IP address, the IP address is displayed.				
Gateway					
Bytes Received	Diaplay the values of data in received and cant data poskets				
Sent Bytes	Display the volume of data in received and sent data packets.				


### LAN interfaces

LAN Interface	
MAC Address	70:B3:D5:8D:90:C6
IP Address	192.168.0.155
Subnetmask	255.255.255.0
Received Bytes	3.7MiB
Sent Bytes	5.5MiB

Designation	Description				
MAC address	Display of the settings on the LAN connection (local connection) of the mbNET.				
IP address	The IP address is then displayed if the mbNET has a physical connection.				
Subnet mask					
Bytes Received	Display the volume of data in received and cont data packate				
Sent Bytes	Display the volume of data in received and sent data packets.				

#### 28.2 Status > Network

### 28.2.1 General

State > Network							?
Interfaces Network W	VLAN Internet	DHCP D	NS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP>
							_
General Firewall	Network partic	ipants					
Physical Connections : Et	thernet Connectio	ons					
IP address HW type	Flags HW	address	Mas	k Devid	ce		<b>A</b>
192.168.0.2 0x1	0x2 d4	:be:d9:48:45	5:fc *	eth0			*
4							•
Routing table							
Kernel IP routing table							
Destination Gateway	Genmask	Flags	MSS Window	irtt Ifac	ce		
192.168.0.0 0.0.0.0	255.255.255	.0 U	00	0 eth	9		-
4							
Router Listening Ports							
Active Internet connection	is (only servers)						
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local	Address	Foreign Add	dress	State			
tcp 0 00.0.0.	0:9002	0.0.0.0:*		LISTEN			
udp 0 0 127.0.	0.1:514	0.0.0.0:*					
udn 0 00.0.0. ∢	0:25353	0.0.0.0:*					E E
Router Connections : Con	nnections to the R	outer					
Active Internet connection	is (w/o servers)	Faundam Ada		Chata			Â
top 0 0127.0	Address 0 1.52072	127 0 0 1.1	1883	State	r		
tcp 0 0 127.0.	0.1:52030	127.0.0.1:1	1883	TIME WAIT	r		
Physical connections: Et	hernet connecti	ions					
Displays the physical conn	ections used to c	connect the	router to ot	her comp	uters.		
Route table							
Displays all routes used.							
Router monitored ports							

Displays all monitored ports.

### Router connections: Connections to the router

Displays all IP addresses of ports, such as of computers that are connected to the router.



### 28.2.2 Firewall

State	e > Ne	twork										?
Inte	rfaces	Net	work	WLAN	Intern	iet DHC	P DNS	6 Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPS	ec VPN-PPTP>
G	eneral	F	irewall	Ne	twork p	articipants	5					
IN	/ OUT ,	/ FORW	/ARD									
Chai	n INPU	T (poli	cy DROP	0 packe	ts, 0 b	ytes)						
num	pkts	bytes	target	prot	opt in	out	sourc	ce	des	tinatior	1	
1	0	0	DROP	icmp	*	*	0.0.0	0.0/0	0.0	.0.0/0		icmptype 17 /*
2	0	0	DROP	icmp	*	*	0.0.0	0.0/0	0.0	.0.0/0		icmptype 14 /*
3	0	0	DROP	icmp	*	*	0.0.0	0.0/0	0.0	.0.0/0		icmptype 13 /*
4	112	4480	DROP	all	*	*	0.0.6	0.0/0	0.0	.0.0/0		state INVALID
5 	445K	30M	ACCEPT	all	*	*	0.0.6	3.0/0	0.0	.0.0/0		state RFLATED.F
NA Chai	T n PRER	DUTING	(policy	ACCEPT	14386 p	ackets, 2	070K byte	25)				
num	pkts	bytes	target	prot	opt in	out	sourc	ce	des	tinatior	n	
1	14386	2070K	NEW	all	*	*	0.0.0	0.0/0	0.0	.0.0/0		state NEW
2	14386	2070K	prerout	ing_rule	all	*	*	0.0.0.0/	0	0.0.0	0.0/0	
3	14386	2070K	prerout	ing_fwd	all -	- *	*	0.0.0.0/0		0.0.0.	0/0	
4	0	0	prerout	ing_wan_	eth al	1 et	h1 *	0.0.0	.0/0	0.	0.0.0/0	
5	0	0	prerout	ing_inte	rnet a	11 e	th1 *	0.0.	0.0/0	6	0.0.0/0	
Chai	n INPU	T (poli	.cy ACCE	PT 1814	packets	, 516K by	tes)					
num	pkts	bytes	target	prot	opt in	out	sourc	ce	des	tinatior	1	
Chai	n OUTPI	UT (pol	icy ACC	EPT 1330	6 packe	ts, 798K	bytes)					
num	pkts	bytes	target	prot	opt in	out	sourc	ce	des	tinatior	1	
Chai	n POSTI		(policy	y ACCEPT	13306	packets,	798K byte	es)				

## IN/OUT/FORWARD

Displays incoming and outgoing data traffic as well as forwarding.

### NAT

Displays natted data traffic.

## 28.2.3 Network participants

Status > Net	work									?
Interfaces	Network	Internet	DHCP	DNS Se	rver DynDNS	NTP	VPN-OpenVPN	loT	Runtime	Þ
General	Firewall	Netwo	ork particip	ants						
Network pa	rticipants									
IP	At MA	C Address	Count	Len	MAC Vendor / H	ostname				
172.16.31.22	22 28:63	· 36 · 80 · 18 ·	5f 1		Unknown vendor					
172.16.31.34	4 70:b3	:d5:64:2e:	bd 1	60	MB Connect Lin	e GmbH	Fernwartungssystem	ne		
0.0.0.0	e4:90	:69:a7:53:	c1 1	60	Unknown vendor					

The LAN network participants that have been recognized via ARP reconnaissance are listed here.

### 28.3 Status > Modem

### 28.3.1 GSM information

#### Manual control of the GSM modem

State > M	odem								?
Interfaces	8 Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP1>
GSM Info	ormations Control of the	Modem	em						
Restart		► Ex	ecute						
Reboot	Here you c	an click or	the "Exec	cute" but	ton to restart t	he GSM m	nodem.		

### Information

Inform	ation	ı	
Signal O	uality		
Signar Q	aaarej	77%	
GSM Ser	vice	LTE	
SIM card	slot	SIM 1	
SIM State	e	OK	
Provider		Telekom.de	
	Jun	6 00:50:41 nero user.info kernel: [25384.177480]	option 2-1:1.0: GSM modem (1-port) converter
Logging	Jun	6 00:50:41 nero user.info kernel: [25384.179060]	usb 2-1: GSM modem (1-port) converter now att
	Jun	6 00:50:41 nero user.info kernel: [25384.181410]	option 2-1:1.3: GSM modem (1-port) converter
	Jun	6 00:50:41 nero user.info kernel: [25384.189008]	usb 2-1: GSM modem (1-port) converter now att

Designation	Description
Signal strength	Signal strength display (in %)
GSM transfer procedure	Display of the transfer procedure, depending on the type of modem, signal strength etc.
SIM card slot	Display of the active SIM card slot
SIM Status	Status of detected SIM Card
Provider	Displays the wireless service provider
Logging	All the events and errors of the GSM modems are listed here.

### 28.3.2 Modem

Status > Mo	dem								?
Interfaces	Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP1>
GSM Inform	nations	Modem							
Modem-Co	nnection								
User		Active			IP local		IP F	Remote	
Informatio	on from the	last connec	tion						
Connected		•							
Sent Bytes									
Received By	tes								
Modem Co	mmands								
Modem Com (without AT)	imand )						E	kecute	

### **Modem Connection**

Here, you can see which user has dialled in to the router via a modem. When the dial-up connection is successful, the IP address of the PPP server and the PPP client (remote) are displayed. This is always incoming connections. An active connection is symbolized by a solid green circle.

Information about the last connection							
Connected	An active connection is symbolized by a solid green circle.						
Sent Bytes	Displays the connection time and the number of bytes sent and received in the						
Bytes Received	last connection, as long as the router is not restarted or switched off in the mean- time.						

#### Modem command

NOTICE

### Use this function only as instructed by the MB connect line support staff!

Modem command	Enter here the modem command and click on the "Execute" button.
(without AT)	



### 28.4 Wi-Fi

### Information

State > WLAN								?
Interfaces Network	WLAN	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP>
Information								
Connected	•							
SSID								
Signal Quality	0 %							
Operating Frequency	0							
IP Address								
Subnetmask								
Gateway								

Designation	Description
Connected	Display of the connection status via an LED symbol
SSID	Display Wi-Fi Network Names
Signal strength	Signal strength display (in %)
Operating fre- quency	Operating frequency display
IP address	
Subnet mask	Displays the settings on the WI-FIL connection (local connection) of the router. The IP address is displayed if the router has a physical connection
Gateway	

### Available Wi-Fi networks

Available WLAN Networks							
	SSID	Signal Quality					
Cell 1	MB Connect Line Gu WLAN	uest -89 dBm	Q				
Cell 2	MB Entwicklung	-69 dBm	Q				

Available networks are listed here.

### 28.5 Internet

State > Internet										
Interfaces	Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP>	
Manual Control of the Internet Service										
Restart		► Ex	ecute							
Internet co	onnection									
External Ro	uter/Firewa	u 🔸	Connec	ction esta	blished					
Internet Logging										
4									Þ	
Internet Lo	ogging	u	Connec	ction esta	biished				4	

### Manual control of the dial-up Internet service

Here you can click on the "**Execute**" button to manually restart the Internet dial-up service and thus disconnect to enforce a new dial.

#### NOTICE

#### Use this function only as instructed by the MB connect line support staff!

#### Internet access

This displays outgoing connections to the Internet. This can be both outgoing connections via the modem as well as connections over WAN.

An active connection is symbolized by a solid green circle.

#### Internet logging

Error messages regarding the internet connection will be listed here.



### 28.6 DHCP

S	tate > DH	СР								?
l	Interfaces	Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP
DHCP Server LAN										
_		Inactive								
	DHCP Ser	ver WAN								
		Inactive								
	Logging									
	4									Þ
-										

DHCP Client	t WAN
IP Address	172.16.20.191
Subnetmask	255.255.255.0
Gateway	172.16.20.253
DNS	172.25.255.250
Logging	eth1 :: Tue Jun 5 19:29:18 UTC 2018 bound: IP=172.16.20.191/255.255.255.0 router=172.16.20.253 domain="mars.local" dns="172.25.255. Error: Connection refused

### **DHCP Server LAN**

Displays the IP addresses that the DHCP server assigns to connected clients.

### **DHCP Server WAN**

Displays the IP addresses that the DHCP server assigns to connected clients.

#### Logging

Displays the IP addresses that the DHCP assigns and which IP addresses are not allowed.

#### **DHCP Client WAN**

Information about clients connected via the WAN connection.

### Logging

All the events and errors of the DHCP server and DHCP client are logged here.

## 28.7 DNS Server

State > DNS Server									?
Interfaces	Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP >
DNS Serve	DNS Server								
Name									
IP Adress									
Logging									
System logg	gings	4							Þ

### **DNS Server**

Designation	Description
Name	Displays the name of the DNS server (if not assigned by the Internet Service Provider).
IP address	Displays the IP address of the DNS server (if not assigned by the Internet Service Provider).

## Logging

Designation	Description
System Logging	Display of the work steps executed by the DNS server.



## 28.8 DynDNS

State > DynDNS									?
Interfaces	Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP1>
dyndns									
Updated IP	Updated IP Address								
Logging									
System logg loggings	gingsSysten	1							F

## DynDNS

Designation	Description
Updated IP-address	Displays the current IP address that is assigned to the mbNET via the Internet.

## Logging

Designation	Description
System Logging	Here all events and errors relating to the DynDNS service are displayed.

## 28.9 NTP

State > NTF	þ								?
Interfaces	Network	Modem	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PP
Date and	Time								
Date Time (	UTC)	Tue Ju	ın 5 18:15:14	4 UTC 2018	8				
Locale Date	Time	Tue Ju	ın 5 20:15:14	4 CEST 201	18				
Start NTP U	pdate	► Ex	ecute						
Logging									
NTP Loggin	g	Jun 5 Jun 5	19:15:48 n 20:00:01 n	iero user. iero user.	info settime: info settime:	NTP is disa NTP is disa	abled! abled!		*
		4							

### Date and time

Designation	Description
Date/Time (UTC)	Displays the current system time in Universal Time Coordinates (UTC).
Local date/time	
Time update	Clicking on the " <b>Execute</b> " button, synchronises the time with the NTP server stored and activated under <b>System &gt; Settings &gt; Time Settings</b> .

## Logging

Designation	Description
NTP logging	All notifications and error messages of the service are displayed here.

### 28.10VPN-IPSec

Sta	ate > VP	N-IPSec								?
Ir	iterfaces	Network	WLAN	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP>
	Connectio	ons Inbound	l Outboun	ıd						
Na	ame	Active	C L	Connection Local	Data C P	onnection Data eer	Status IPSec SA	Status ISAKMP SA	Start	Stop
		•					•	•	► Start	► Stop
	System IF	Sec user log	gs							
Ju Ju Ju	n 517:1 n 517:1 n 517:1	5:16 nero u 5:16 nero u 5:16 nero u	ser.info k ser.info k ser.info k	kernel: [ kernel: [ kernel: [	0.34904 0.35164 0.35165	47] klips_info:i 49] klips_info:i 56] klips_info:i	psec_init psec_alg_ psec_alg_	: KLIPS s init: KLI init: cal	tartup, Lib PS alg v=0.8 ling ipsec_a	reswan KLIPS : 3.1-0 (EALG_M alg_static_in:
Ju Ju Ju	n 517:1 n 517:1 n 517:1	5:16 nero u: 5:16 nero u: 5:16 nero u:	ser.warn   ser.warn   ser.warn	kernel: [ kernel: [ kernel: [	0.35167 0.35168 0.35169	73] ipsec_aes_in 33] ipsec_aes_in 93] ipsec 3des i	it(alg_ty it(alg_ty nit(alg_t	pe=15 alg pe=14 alg ype=15 al	_id=12 name: _id=9 name=a g id=3 name:	=aes): ret=0 aes_mac): ret: =3des): ret=0
Ju ∢	n 5 17:1	5:16 nero u	ser.info k	kernel: [	1.42955	53] klips_info:i	psec_init	: KLIPS s	tartup, Lib	reswan KLIPS :

#### Incoming/outgoing connections

I

Both the incoming and the outgoing VPN connections of the router are displayed here.

An active connection is indicated by a green LED icon 🔍 .

The duration of the connection and the dialled-in user are displayed.

After disconnection, the time during which the corresponding connection was active is displayed.

By clicking on the "Start" or "Stop" button, you can manually start or stop a connection.

### NOTICE

Use this function only as instructed by the MB connect line support staff!

### System logging: Connection

The connection protocol is displayed here.

### 28.11 VPN-PPTP

#### 28.11.1 VPN PPTP server

St	ate > V	PN-PPTP						?
\$	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmanager	System
	Server	Clients						
	Connect	tions Inbound	d Outbound					
C	onnecti	on	Active	IP to	ocal	IP Remote	Connection	1 Status
			•					
	System	PPTP Server	user logs					
4								Þ

### Incoming/outgoing connections

The incoming VPN connections of the mbNET are listed here.

An active connection is indicated by a green LED icon

The connection time, users dialled-in, local and remote IP address is displayed. After disconnection, you can see the time during which the corresponding connection was active.

#### **System logging: Connection**

All notifications and error messages of the PPTP service are displayed here.



### 28.11.2 VPN PPTP clients

State > VF	N-PPTP						?
< NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmana	ager System
Server Connect	Clients	Outbound				_	
Connectio	n Activ	/e IP	local IP Re	mote Con	nection Status	Start	Stop
	•					► Start	► Stop
System I	PPTP Client u	iser logs					
4							Þ

#### Incoming/outgoing connections

Outgoing VPN connections from the mbNET are displayed here.

An active connection is indicated by a green LED icon 🔍 .

The connection time, users dialled-in, local and remote IP address is displayed. After disconnection, you can see the time during which the corresponding connection was active.

By clicking on the "Start" or "Stop" button, you can manually start or stop a connection.

NOTICE

Use this function only as instructed by the MB connect line support staff!

### System logging: Connection

All notifications and error messages of the PPTP service are displayed here.

### 28.12VPN-OpenVPN

State > V	'PN-OpenVPN	1					?
< NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmana	ger System
Connec	tions Inbound	Outbound					
Name	Active		Connection Data C Local F		nnection Data er	Start	Stop
	•					► Start	► Stop
System	OpenVPN use	er logs					
4							Þ

### Incoming/outgoing connections

Both the incoming and the outgoing VPN connections of the mbNET are displayed here.

An active connection is indicated by a green LED icon 🔍.

Name, local addresses and partner addresses are displayed here.

By clicking on the "Start" or "Stop" button, you can manually start or stop a connection.

NOTICE

Use this function only as instructed by the MB connect line support staff!

### **System logging: Connection**

The connection protocol is displayed here.

### 28.13IoT

Status	> loT							?
∢IPSec	VPN-	PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	loT	Diagnosis	Memory devices	Alarm manager	System
Docke	er	Docker	Management	Flows	and Dashboar	d		

### 28.13.1 IoT > Docker

Status >	loT						?
<psec td="" v<=""><td>VPN-PPTP</td><td>VPN-OpenVPN</td><td>loT</td><td>Diagnosis</td><td>Memory devices</td><td>Alarm manager</td><td>System</td></psec>	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	loT	Diagnosis	Memory devices	Alarm manager	System
Docker	Docker	Management	Flows ar	nd Dashboar	d		
Status							
Name		Act	ive		Stop		
Service		•			► S	top	
License	е Туре						
advance							
	_			_			_
Logging	9						
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.168635437+02:0	0" level=	warning msg	could not change	group /var/run/dock@	er.sock to
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.351682396+02:0	0" level=	info msg="l:	bcontainerd: start	ed new containerd pr	rocess" pid
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.352484854+02:0	0" level=	info msg="pa	arsed scheme: \"uni	x\"" module=grpc	
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.352701146+02:0	0" level=	info msg="s	heme \"unix\" not	registered, fallback	<pre>&lt; to defaul</pre>
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.525431271+02:0	0" level=	info msg="c	:ResolverWrapper: s	ending new addresses	s to cc: [{
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.525812562+02:0	0" level=	info msg="C	lientConn switching	balancer to \"pick	first\"" m
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:17.526328479+02:0	0" level=	info msg="p:	ickfirstBalancer: H	andleSubConnStateCha	ange: 0x12f
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:21.165743104+02:0	0" level=	info msg="s	arting containerd"	revision=9754871865	5f7fe2f4e74
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:21.172500604+02:0	0" level=	info msg="lo	ading plugin "io.c	ontainerd.content.v1	l.content".
time="2019	9-04-02T13:52	:21.174718979+02:0	0" level=	info msg="lo	oading plugin "io.c	ontainerd.snapshotte	er.v1.btrfs

Here you can see:

- The **Status** of your mbEDGE installation
  - green LED icon= mbEDGE is active
  - gray LED icon = mbEDGE is not active

By clicking on the "**Finish**" button mbEDGE is deactivated. Click on the "**Start**" button to reactivate mbEDGE.

- The License Type "advanced" or "start"
- The Logging

### 28.13.2 IoT > Docker Management

Status	> loT						?
∢IPSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	loT	Diagnosis	Memory devices	Alarm manager	System
Docke	Docker Management Flows and Dashboard						
Status	3						
Name		Active		Start		Stop	
Service		•		► S	tart	► Stop	

Here you can see

• the Status of Docker Management

gray LED icon = Docker Management is disabled green LED icon= Docker Management is activated

Click on the "Start" button to activate Docker Management.

Click on the "Stop" button to deactivate Docker Management.

# mbNET.

### 28.13.3 IoT > Flows and Dashboard

Status	> loT						?
< PSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	loT	Diagnosis	Memory devices	Alarm manager	System
Docke	er Docker	Management	Flows a	and Dashboar	d		
Status	5						
Name		Active		Start		Stop	
Service		•		► S	tart	► Stop	
Loggi	ng						
> node-r > rm -rf	red-docker@1.0. /usr/src/node	0 start /usr/src/no -red/.sessions.json	ode-red n && node	e \$NODE_OPTIC	DNS node_modules/nod	le-red/red.js -v \$Fl	.OWS "use
> node-r	ed-docker@1.0.	0 start /usr/src/nd	ode-red				
> rm -rf	/usr/src/node	-red/.sessions.json	n && nod	e \$NODE_OPTIC	DNS node_modules/nod	le-red/red.js -v \$FL	LOWS "use
20 Feb 1	20 Feb 14:38:52 - [info]						
Welcome	to Node-RED						

#### Here you can see

• the **Status** of accessing Flows and Dashboard.

**gray** LED icon = Access to Flows and Dashboard is **disabled**. **green** LED icon= Access to Flows and Dashboard is **activated**.

Click on the "Start" button to activate the access.

Click on the "Stop" button to deactivate the access.

• The Logging

### 28.14Runtime

## NOTICE

This function is only relevant if you operate the mbNET in the mbCONNECT24 portal.

## 28.15Diagnostics - Network Resources

Status > Diagnosis						?
⟨PN-IPSec VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN IoT	Runtime	Diagnosis	Memory devices	Alarm manager	\$
Network Utilities						
Ping	google.com				▶ Ping	
TraceRoute	google.com			[	TraceRoute	
NS Lookup	google.com			[	NS Lookup	
TCPDUMP	-i eth0 not port 44	13	Save cap	ture to usb	► TCPDUMP	
Port Check	www.google.com		: 80		► Port Check	
4						)

Designation	Description
Ping	After entering an internet address or an IP address, you can use the ping command (Click on the " <b>Ping</b> " button) to determine whether the corresponding address is accessible. Among other things, for example, you can easily determine whether an Internet connection exists.
Route monitoring	This command provides you with detailed information about the network connection between the mbNET and a remote host or other routers. Route monitoring is carried out and made visible here.
DNS names resolve (nslookup)	With this function, you can check whether name resolution (https://www.google.de = 216.58.209.206) takes place. If after executing the command "DNS name resolve(nslookup)" no result is output, check whether in your mbNET a DNS server address is entered under network-DNS, or if the DNS server of your network is accessible.
TCPDUMP	<ul> <li>In order to closely monitor the network traffic, you can use the "TCPDUMP" command. Some examples of the use of this command are:</li> <li>-i eth0 not port 80 Displays all TCP/IP connections to the (-i) LAN (eth0) interface, except (not) those using Port 80 (port 80) when incoming or outgoing.</li> <li>-i eth1 port 23 Displays all TCP/IP connections to the (-i) WAN (eth1) interface using Port 23 (port 23) when incoming or outgoing.</li> <li>-vvv -i eth1 Displays all traffic in verbose mode, Level3 (-vvv) on the (-i) WAN (eth1) interface.</li> <li>You can find detailed TCPDUMP documentation at www.tcpdump.org</li> </ul>
Port Check	You can use this function to check the status of a port (open / not open) in connection with an Internet or IP address.

## 28.16 Storage media

S	tate > M	lemory devi	ce					?
\$	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmanager	System
	Flash dı	rive						
U	SB Devi	ces connecte	d 🕒					
	SD Card							
S	D Card o	onnected	•					

Status display showing whether a storage medium (USB stick or/and SC card) is connected to the mbNET.

green LED symbol 💭 = storage medium connected

Grey LED symbol = storage medium is not connected

## 28.17 Alarm Manager

State > Alertmanage	۲					?
K NTP VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmanager	System
Input/Output						
Inputs						
Input 1	Input 2		Input 3	I	nput 4	
•	٠		•	•		
Outputs						
Output 1		Output 2				
•		•				
System loggings						
4						Þ

Designation	Description
Inputs	The statuses of the digital inputs are displayed here. The status query is performed and updated approximately every three seconds.
Outputs	The statuses of the digital outputs are displayed here. The status query is performed and updated approximately every three seconds.
The status query is p	erformed and updated approximately every three seconds.
green LED symbol	= status = 1
grey LED symbol 🔍	= status = 0
System Logging	All the events and error messages relating to the alarm management are saved here (e.g.: Short message delivery, activity of inputs, etc.).

### 28.18System

### 28.18.1 System-Usage

State > System					?
NTP VPN-IPSec VPN-PPTP	VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmanager	System
System-Usage System inform	nation MQTT	Debug List			
CPU Informations					
CPU Usage	15.2223%				
RAM in use					
Total	504676 KB				
Free	169616 KB				
Used		66% (	335060 KB)		
Flash in use					
Configuration flash	511 KB				
temporary flash (Log files)	300 KB				

### **CPU Information**

Display of the current utilization of the CPU.

## RAM usage

Displays the currently required /used RAM of the router.

### Flash in use

Displays the capacity of the configuration memory and temporary memory.



### 28.18.2 System Information

Status > Sy	stem								?
Interfaces	Network	Internet	DHCP	DNS Server	DynDNS	NTP	VPN-IPSec	VPN-PPTP	>
System-Us	age S	ystem infor	mation	MQTT Debug	List				
System Ke	ernel Loggi	ing							
[ 0.00000 [ 0.00000 [ 0.000000 [ 0.000000 [ 0.000000 [ 0.000000	0] Booting L 0] Linux ver 0] CPU: ARM 0] CPU: PIP1 0] OF: fdt:M 0] cma: Rese	inux on phy rsion 4.10.( 7 Processon 7 / VIPT non Machine mode arved 16 Mil	ysical CPU 0-rc7 (yoct r [413fc082 naliasing d el: MB Conn B at 0x9e80	0x0 0@0529c6efeaf8) ] revision 2 (A ata cache, VIP1 ect Line GmbH - 2000	) (gcc versio ARMv7), cr=10 [ aliasing in - NeRo	n 6.4.0 c5387d structio	(GCC) ) #1 Tue n cache	Jul 14 09:0	
[ 0.00000	6] Chia: Kest [] Memory po	olicy: Data	cache writ	eback					*
System er	ror log								
[Jul 20 19:0) [Jul 20 19:0) [Jul 20 19:0) [Jul 20 19:0) [Jul 20 19:0) [Jul 20 19:0) [Jul 20 19:1] [Jul 20 19:1]	2:01] > cror 3:01] > cror 4:01] > cror 5:01] > cror 5:01] > cror 5:01] > cror 2:01] > cror 3:011 > cror	nd[1975]: (n nd[1975]: (n nd[1975]: (n nd[1975]: (n nd[1975]: (n nd[1975]: (n nd[1975]: (n	root) CAN'T root) CAN'T root) CAN'T root) CAN'T root) CAN'T root) CAN'T	OPEN (/etc/crd OPEN (/etc/crd OPEN (/etc/crd OPEN (/etc/crd OPEN (/etc/crd OPEN (/etc/crd	on.d/*): No s on.d/*): No s on.d/*): No s on.d/*): No s on.d/*): No s on.d/*): No s	uch file uch file uch file uch file uch file uch file	or directory or directory or directory or directory or directory or directory	¢	•
Clear Error	Memory								

### System Kernel Logging

Possible reasons for errors in the router can be found in the system information.

### System error log

For example, if the Stat-LED on the front of the device is flashing, it may be possible to use the logging to discover the cause of the error.



### 28.18.3 MQTT debug list

	State > System					?
l	K NTP VPN-IPSec VPN-PP	PTP VPN-OpenVPN	Diagnostic	Memory device	Alertmanager	System
	Memory Usage System Inf	ormations MQTT I	Debug List			
	Торіс	Value				
	/network/wan/state/led	2				
	/network/wan/mac	70:B3:D5:8D:90:C7				
	/network/wan/ip	172.16.20.191				
	/network/wan/subnetmask	255.255.255.0				
	/network/wan/gateway	172.16.20.253				
	/network/wan/dns	172.25.255.250				
	/network/wan/rx_bytes	7.1MiB				
	/network/wan/tx_bytes	22.4KiB				
	/network/wan/proto	dhcp				
	/network/wan/domain	mars.local				
ŕ.	/network/lan/state/led	2				
1	/network/lan/mac	70:B3:D5:8D:90:C6	3			
	/network/lan/in	192,168,0,155				

The MQTT debug list outputs the system information in tabular form.

The mbNET can be used as an MQTT broker.

After activating the "MQTT access to status topics" function under "System > Settings > Device API", you can query the values from the "MQTT debug list".

## 29 Firmware update via the USB interface

You can update the **mbNET** directly via the USB interface. The device then automatically recognizes the firmware saved to a connected USB stick. Pressing the **Dial Out** button starts the firmware update.

#### **Preparation:**

- Go to www.mbconnectline.com and download the latest firmware version (e.g. "mb-NET\_FW\_V624.zip").
- After extracting it, you will find the actual firmware file "image.swux" along with the "changelog.txt" and "open-source software licenses.txt" files.
- Save the "image.swux" file on a USB stick.

NOTICE

**IMPORTANT:** The "**image.swux**" firmware file must not be renamed and must be stored in the top-level directory of the USB stick! The USB stick must have the FAT file format!

#### **Execution:**

When the *mbNET* is ready for operation (LED Pwr + Rdy light up), connect the USB stick to one of the USB ports of the device.

- 1 As soon as the firmware file has been detected by the *mb*-*NET*,LED fc1 + Fc3 start flashing.
- 2 Now press the **Dial Out** button and keep it pressed until **LED Fc2 flashes**.
- 3 Release the Dial Out button.

The *mbNET* now performs a device reboot.

4 If both the **Pwr and Rdy LEDs light up**, the firmware update is complete.

The *mbNET* is now ready for operation and can be used again as usual.



### NOTICE

If both the firmware as well as a mbCONNECT24 portal configuration are on the USB stick, the **firmware** will always be detected by the mbNET (**Fc1 + Fc3 flash**). If you do not respond within 10 seconds, the Dial Out button switches the mbNET to **Portal Configuration** (**Fc1 + Fc2 flash**). If you do not respond within 10 seconds, the device will return to normal mode.

## 30 Programming the mbCONNECT24 portal configuration via the USB interface

If you created the *mbNET* device configuration in the *mbCONNECT24* service portal, you can scan this portal configuration directly via the USB interface into the *mbNET*. The device automatically detects the portal configuration stored on a connected USB Stick ("mbconnect24.mbn/-.mbnx"). Pressing the **Dial Out** button starts the scan.

#### **Requirement:**

You have configured the *mbNET* in the *mbCONNECT24* portal and saved the configuration file via transfer type "*Download to PC configuration*" on a USB stick.

#### NOTICE

The configuration file "mbconnect24.mbn/-.mbnx" should not be renamed and must be stored in the toplevel directory (root) of the USB stick!

The USB stick must have the FAT/FAT32 file format!

You can find information about mbCONNECT24 on

- our website at www.mbconnectline.com
- or in the mbCONNECT24 online help

#### Execution:

When the *mbNET* is ready for operation (LED Pwr + Rdy light up), connect the USB stick to one of the USB ports of the device.

- 1 As soon as the firmware file has been detected by the *mb*-*NET*,LED fc1 + Fc2 start flashing.
- 2 Now press the **Dial Out** button and keep it pressed until **LED Fc3 flashes**.
- 3 Release the **Dial Out** button.

Now, the settings from *mbCONNECT24* are applied in the *mbNET*, and the device restarts.

4 If the *mbNET* can connect to the Internet (for example, network cable, SIM card, antennas installed) it logs on to your *mbCONNECT24*-account. This is indicated by the **flashing** Con LED

### NOTICE

If both the firmware as well as a mbCONNECT24 portal configuration are on the USB stick, the **firmware** will always be detected by the mbNET (**Fc1 + Fc3 flash**). If you do not press the Dial Out button within 10 seconds, the mbNET switches to **Portal Configuration** (**Fc1 + Fc2 flash**). If you do not respond within 10 seconds, the device will return to normal mode.



### 31 Factory settings when delivered

### 31.1 IP address of the mbNET

The *mbNET* is set to the following IP address in the factory:

IP address 192.168.0.100

Subnet mask 255.255.255.0

### 31.2 User name and password - for access to the mbNET Web Interface

The *mbNET* is delivered with the following user data:

User name admin

PasswordThe default password can be found<br/>on the back of the device



NOTICE

Make sure you change the default access data immediately!

#### 32 Load factory settings

### NOTICE

Before you configure the device to its factory settings, you should note the following:

- · Save your configuration first. After restoring the factory settings, all of your settings/changes will be deleted.
- The IP address of the device is reset to the original IP address (192.168.0.100). You may also need to modify the network settings of the configuration PC accordingly.
- The device password is reset to its individual default password. The default password can be found on the back of the unit.
- No USB stick/storage medium should be connected to the device.
- The device must be ready for operation (Pwr + Rdy LEDs light up).



Execution:

- 1 Switch on the mbNET or press the Reset button.
- 2 When LED Rdy flashes (green) => Press and hold the Dial Out button.
- 3 When LED Fc4 is lit => release the Dial Out button and press again.
- 4 When LED **Fc3** is **lit** => press the **Dial Out** button again.
- 5 When LED Fc2 is lit => press the Dial Out button again.
- 6 After approximately 10 20 sec. LED Fc3 flashes.

When both, the Pwr and Rdy LEDs light up and the Fc1 LED flashes\* (5Hz), the mbNET is reset to its factory settings and can/must be reconfigured.

\* only for devices with **SIMPLY.connect** function.

## 33 Device restart (Reset)

### Directly on the device (mbNET) using the reset button

For example, use a paper clip and press the Reset button on the mbNET. The device will now restart.

The restart is complete once both the "Rdy" and "Pwr" LEDs light up.



### Via the mbNET web interface

mbNET							admin
System > Info					ľ	Logout	59n <b>1</b>
Info CTM	Settings	Web	User	Certificates	Me	Quickstart	
System						Reboot	English T
Device type	MD	H855				Languag	English
Sorialnumber	051	000000	22072				

1 Open the "admin" context menu

2 Click "Restart"



### 34 Annex

### 34.1 Set computer address (IP address) in Windows 10

#### NOTICE

If you want to access the web interface of the mbNET via a configuration PC, the following conditions must be met:

- The mbNET must be connected to the PC via one of its LAN interfaces.
- Access to the web configuration is not blocked (System > Web > System Service).
- The IP address of the PC is set in such a way that it is in the same IP range as the mbNET (factory setting for the mbNET is 192.168.0.100), i.e. 192.168.0.X.
  - $\Rightarrow$  X = variable, where X should not already be occupied by any other network participants.
- · Open the Windows Start menu and go to the Explorer settings. ល Settings k (1) Power & sleep E Default apps Ŧ · In Settings, click the Network and Internet Settings × section. p ୍ଦ୍ରେ SETTINGS Find a setting Network & Internet Devices System Wi-Fi, airplane mode, Bluetooth, printers, Display, notifications, VPN mouse apps, power · Under Network and Internet click the section 🔅 NETWORK & INTERNET Find a setting ρ Network and Sharing Centre. Ethernet Wi-Fi Airplane mode jupiter.far Data usage Connected VPN Related settings Dial-up Change adapter settings Ethernet Change advanced sharing settings Proxy Network and Sharing Center In the Network and Sharing Centre, click on 🚆 Network and Sharing Cente the current connection (LAN connection in ← → < ↑ 🚆 « Network ... > Network and Sharing Center 👌 Search Control Panel P this case). Control Panel Home View your basic network information and set up connections Cange adapter settings View your active networks Cange advanced sharing settings jupiter.far Access type: Internet Domänennetzwerk Connections: 🔋 Local Area Connection Change your networking settings -Set up a new connection or network Set up a wireless, broadband, dial-up, ad hoc, or VPN connection; or set up a router or access point.

• Click on properties in the next window (Status of LAN connection).

Local Area Connection State	us D
General	
Connection	
IPv4 Connectivity:	Internet
IPv6 Connectivity:	Limited
Media State:	Enabled
Duration:	00:04:01
Speed:	100.0 Mbps
Details	
Activity	
Properties Disable	Diagnose
	<u>C</u> lose

🖗 Ethernet Properties 🛛 🗙
Networking Sharing
Connect using:
Intel(R) 82579LM Gigabit Network Connection
Configure
This connection uses the following items:
File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks
Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)
Aicrosoft Network Adapter Multiplexor Protocol
Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Driver
Install Uninstall Properties
OK Cancel

eneral	
Obtain an IP address automat	tically
• Use the following IP address:	
IP address:	192 . 168 . 0 . 🗙
Subnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Default gateway:	192.168.0.100
<ul> <li>Obtain DNS server address ad Ouse the following DNS server Preferred DNS server: Alternate DNS server:     </li> </ul>	addresses:

 Here, under Properties of the LAN-connection, select the entry Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4), and click on Properties.

· Here,

- the IP address of the computer must be in the same network range as the mbNET,
- the subnet mask 255.255.255.0 must be entered.
- The entry for the default gateway has the same IP address as the mbNET (here 192.168.0.100).

Save your settings and close the single windows.

### 34.2 Modem initialization (AT commands)

#### General notes on AT commands

The commands can be entered under **Network > Modem > Modem Settings** in the input fields "Modem Initialization".

### NOTICE

The prefix of a command always consists of the characters "AT".

These two characters (AT) do not have to be entered in the fields.

- A command is made up of individual characters, which can be described as follows.
- The command consists of an abbreviation and, where appropriate, associated values.
- It is not case-sensitive.
- Multiple commands can be combined into one command line.
   Example: L1M1\N5

#### Commands of the analogue modem

В	Select con AT <b>B0</b> AT <b>B1</b>	munication standard CCITT Modulation Bell Modulation	∖B	Treatme AT <b>B</b> n	ent of the break signal Send a break signal to the remote terminal
				n= 0-9 ir sible for ed.	n 100 ms units(default AT <b>\B3</b> ) only pos- a connection that is not error-correct-
%С	Setting the AT%C0 AT%C1	e data compression Data compression inactive Data compression active	+GCI	Country This cor logue m Exampl	<b>y-specific settings</b> nmand is used to configure the ana- odem to country-specific settings. <b>e:</b> AT <b>+GCI=B5</b>
L	Speaker vo ATL0, 1 ATL2 ATL3	olume low volume medium volume high volume	Μ	<b>Speake</b> AT <b>M0</b> AT <b>M1</b> AT <b>M2</b> AT <b>M3</b>	r mode Speaker always OFF. Speaker ON, until data carrier signal is detected. Speaker ON, if the modem is ready to dial. Speaker OFF while the number is di- alled, then ON after dialling until a data carrier signal is detected.

#### +MS Select the modulation type

This command sets the modulation type and the bit rate to be negotiated between the local and the remote modem.

Syntax:

+MS=[<carrier>[,<automode>[,<min\_tx\_rate>[,<max\_tx\_rate>[,<min\_rx\_rate>[,<max\_rx\_rate>]]]]] **Example:** 

AT+MS= V34,1,9600,33600,9600,33600

Modulation	<carrier></carrier>	Possible baud rates		
Bell 103	B103	300		
Bell 212	B212	1200 Rx 75 Tx or 75 Rx/1200 Tx		
V.21	V21	300		
V.22	V22	1200		
V.22 to	V22B	1200, 2400		
V.23	V23C	1200		
V.32	V23C	4800, 9600		
V.32 to	V32B	4800, 7200, 9600, 12000, 14400		
V.34	V34	2400, 4800, 7200, 9600, 12000, 14400, 16800, 19200, 21600, 24000, 26400, 28800, 31200, 33600		
Automode	0 = disablec 1 = enabled	l (default)		
AT+MS?	Display of current setting			

#### **\N** Select error correction

- AT\N0 Error correction is turned off.
- AT\N1 Transparent transmission of any data widths via the serial interface without data buffering and error correction.
- AT\N2 V.42LAP-M or MNP 4 error correction. If an error-corrected connection cannot be established, the modem hangs up.
- AT**\N3** V.42LAP-M or MNP 4 error correction. If an error-corrected connection cannot be established, non-error-corrected connection is attempted.
- AT**\N4** V.42LAP-M error correction, if this is not possible, the modem hangs up.
- AT\N5 MNP error correction, if this is not possible, the modem hangs up.

- X Output of messages, dial tone detection This command controls how the modem responds to the dial tone and busy signal and how it displays the CONNECT messages.
  - ATX0 No busy tone and dial tone detection. I.e., NO CARRIER is displayed following an unsuccessful attempt to dial. Messages: OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR and NO ANSWER
  - ATX1 Like ATX0 but CONNECTxxx messages with speed information.
  - ATX2 Busy tone detection is disabled, dial tone detection is enabled. Messages: OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR, NO ANSWER and NO DIAL TONE
  - AT**X3** Busy tone is activated, dial tone detection is disabled. Messages: OK, CONNECT xxx, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR, NO ANSWER
  - ATX4 Busy signal and dial tone detection is enabled. Messages: OK, CONNECTxxx, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR, NO ANSWER and NO DIAL TONE
## 34.3 Country codes for devices with analogue modem

When initialising the modem with the AT command + GCl, you need the country code. **Example:** AT+GCl=B5

No.	Country	Country Code	No.	country	Country Code
1	Afghanistan	B5	2	Albania (AL)	B5
3	Algeria (DZ)	B5	4	American Samoa (AS)	B5
5	Andorra (AD)	B5	6	Angola (AO)	B5
7	Anguilla (AI)	B5	8	Antarctica (AQ)	B5
9	Antigua and Barbuda (AG)	B5	10	Argentina (AR)	07
11	Armenia (AM)	B5	12	Aruba (AW)	B5
13	Australia (AU)	09	14	Austria (AT)	FD
15	Azerbaijan (AZ)	B5	16	Bahamas (BS)	B5
17	Bahrain (BH)	B5	18	Bangladesh (BD)	B5
19	Barbados (BB)	B5	20	Belarus (BY)	B5
21	Belgium (BE)	FD	22	Belize (BZ)	B5
23	Benin (BJ)	B5	24	Bermuda (BM)	B5
25	Bhutan (BT)	B5	26	Bolivia (BO)	B5
27	Bosnia and Herzegovina (BA)	B5	28	Botswana (BW)	B5
29	Bouvet Island (BV)	B5	30	Brazil (BR)	16
31	British Indian Ocean Territory (IO)	B5	32	Brunei Darussalam (BN)	B5
33	Bulgaria (BG)	FD	34	Burkina Faso (BF)	B5
35	Burundi (BI)	B5	36	Cambodia (KH)	B5
37	Cameroon (CM)	B5	38	Canada (CA)	B5
39	Cape Verde (CV)	B5	40	Cayman Islands (KY)	B5
41	Central African Republic (CF)	B5	42	Chad (TD)	B5
43	Chile (CL)	B5	44	China (CN)	B5
45	Christmas Island (CX)	B5	46	Cocos (Keeling) Islands (CC)	B5
47	Colombia (CO)	B5	48	Comoros (KM)	B5
49	Congo (CG)	B5	50	Cook Islands (CK)	B5
51	Costa Rica (CR)	B5	52	Cote D'Ivoire (CI)	B5
53	Croatia (HR)	B5	54	Cuba (CU)	B5
55	Cyprus (CY)	FD	56	Czech Republic (CZ)	FD
57	Denmark (DK)	FD	58	Djibouti (DJ)	B5
59	Dominica (DM)	B5	60	Dominican Republic (DO)	B5
61	East Timor (TP)	B5	62	Ecuador (EC)	B5
63	Egypt (EG)	B5	64	El Salvador (SV)	B5
65	Equatorial Guinea (GQ)	B5	66	Eritrea (ER)	B5
67	Estonia (EE)	FD	68	Ethiopia (ET)	B5
69	Falkland Islands (Malvinas) (FK)	B5	70	Faroe Islands (FO)	B5

No.	Country	Country Code	No.	country	Country Code
71	Fiji (FJ)	B5	72	Finland (FI)	FD
73	France (FR)	FD	74	France-Metropolitan (FX)	FD
75	French Guiana (GF)	B5	76	French Polynesia	B5
77	French Southern Territories (TF)	B5	78	Gabon (GA)	B5
79	Gambia (GM)	B5	80	Georgia (GE)	B5
81	Germany (DE)	FD	82	Ghana (GH)	B5
83	Gibraltar (GI)	B5	84	Greece (GR)	FD
85	Greenland (GL)	B5	86	Grenada (GD)	B5
87	Guadeloupe (GP)	B5	88	Guam (GU)	B5
89	Guatemala (GT)	B5	90	Guinea (GN)	B5
91	Guinea-Bissau (GW)	B5	92	Guyana (GY)	B5
93	Haiti (HT)	B5	94	Heard and McDonald Islands (HM)	B5
95	Honduras (HN)	B5	96	Hong Kong (HK)	99
97	Hungary (HU)	FD	98	Iceland (IS)	FD
99	India (IN)	B5	100	Indonesia (ID)	99
101	Iran (Islamic Republic of) (IR)	B5	102	Iraq (IQ)	B5
103	Ireland (IE)	FD	104	Israel (IL)	B5
105	Italy (IT)	FD	106	Jamaica (JM)	B5
107	Japan (JP)	00	108	Jordan (JO)	B5
109	Kazakhstan (KZ)	B5	110	Kenya (KE)	B5
111	Kiribati (KI)	B5	112	Korea-Democratic People's Republic (KP)	B5
113	Korea-Republic of (KR)	B5	114	Kuwait (KW)	B5
115	Kyrgyzstan (KG)	B5	116	Laos (LA)	B5
117	Latvia (LV)	FD	118	Lebanon (LB)	B5
119	Lesotho (LS)	B5	120	Liberia (LR)	B5
121	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya (LY)	B5	122	Liechtenstein (LI)	FD
123	Lithuania (LT)	FD	124	Luxembourg (LU)	FD
125	Macau (MO)	B5	126	Macedonia (MK)	B5
127	Madagascar (MG)	B5	128	Malawi (MW)	B5
129	Malaysia (MY)	6C	130	Maldives (MV)	B5
131	Mali (ML)	B5	132	Malta (MT)	FD
133	Marshall Islands (MH)	B5	134	Martinique (MQ)	B5
135	Mauritania (MR)	B5	136	Mauritius (MU)	B5
137	Mayotte (YT)	B5	138	Mexico (MX)	B5
139	Micronesia(Federated States of) (FM	B5	140	Moldova-Republic of (MD)	B5
141	Monaco (MC)	B5	142	Mongolia (MN)	B5
143	Montserrat (MS)	B5	144	Morocco (MA)	B5
145	Mozambique (MZ)	B5	146	Myanmar (MM)	B5
147	Namibia (NA)	B5	148	Nauru (NR)	B5



No.	Country	Country Code	No.	country	Country Code
149	Nepal (NP)	B5	150	Netherlands (NL)	FD
151	Netherlands Antilles (AN)	FD	152	New Caledonia (NC)	B5
153	New Zealand (NZ)	7E	154	Nicaragua (NI)	B5
155	Niger (NE)	B5	156	Nigeria (NG)	B5
157	Niue (NU)	B5	158	Norfolk Island (NF)	B5
159	Northern Mariana Islands (MP)	B5	160	Norway (NO)	FD
161	Oman (OM)	B5	162	Pakistan (PK)	B5
163	Palau (PW)	B5	164	Panama (PA)	B5
165	Papua New Guinea(PG)	B5	166	Paraguay (PY)	B5
167	Peru (PE)	B5	168	Philippines (PH)	B5
169	Pitcairn (PN)	B5	170	Poland (PL)	FD
171	Portugal (PT)	FD	172	Puerto Rico (PR)	B5
173	Qatar (QA)	B5	174	Reunion (RE)	B5
175	Romania (RO)	FD	176	Russian Federation (RU)	B5
177	Rwanda (RW)	B5	178	St. Helena (SH)	B5
179	Saint Kitts and Nevis (KN)	B5	180	Saint Lucia (LC)	B5
181	St. Pierre and Miquelon (PM)	B5	182	St. Vincent and the Grenadines (VC)	B5
183	Samoa (WS)	B5	184	San Marino (SM)	B5
185	Sao Tome and Principe (ST)	B5	186	Saudi Arabia (SA)	B5
187	Senegal (SN)	B5	188	Seychelles (SC)	B5
189	Sierra Leone (SL)	B5	190	Singapore (SG)	9C
191	Slovakia (SK)	FD	192	Slovenia (SI)	FD
193	Solomon Islands (SB)	B5	194	Somalia (SO)	B5
195	South Africa (ZA)	9F	196	Sth. Georgia, Sth. Sandwich Islands (GS)	B5
197	Spain (ES)	FD	198	Sri Lanka (LK)	B5
199	Sudan (SD)	B5	200	Suriname (SR)	B5
201	Svalbard and Jan Mayen Islands (SJ)	B5	202	Swaziland (SZ)	B5
203	Sweden (SE)	FD	204	Switzerland (CH)	FD
205	Syrian Arab Republic (SY)	B5	206	Taiwan-Province of China (TW)	FE
207	Tajikistan (TJ)	B5	208	Tanzania-United Republic of (TZ)	B5
209	Thailand (TH)	B5	210	Togo (TG)	B5
211	Tokelau (TK)	B5	212	Tonga (TO)	B5
213	Trinidad and Tobago (TT)	B5	214	Tunisia (TN)	B5
215	Turkey (TR)	FD	216	Turkmenistan (TM)	B5
217	Turks and Caicos Islands (TC)	B5	218	Tuvalu (TV)	B5
219	Uganda (UG)	B5	220	Ukraine (UA)	B5
221	United Arab Emirates (AE)	B5	222	United Kingdom (UK)	FD
223	United States (US)	B5	224	United States Minor Outlying Islands (UM)	B5

No.	Country	Country Code	No.	country	Country Code
225	Uruguay (UY)	B5	226	Uzbekistan (UZ)	B5
227	Vanuatu (VU)	B5	228	Vatican City State (Holy See) (VA)	B5
229	Venezuela (VE)	B5	230	Vietnam (VN)	99
231	Virgin Islands (British) (VG)	B5	232	Virgin Islands (U.S.) (VI)	B5
233	Wallis and Futuna Islands (WF)	B5	234	Western Sahara (EH)	B5
235	Yemen (YE)	B5	236	Yugoslavia (YU)	B5
237	Zaire (ZR)	B5	238	Zambia (ZW)	B5
239	Zimbabwe (ZW)	B5			